COVER PHOTO
Edwin Adlison Rodriguez, Federal Transit Administration

DISCLAIMER
This document is intended as a technical assistance product. It is disseminated under the sponsorship of the U.S. Department of Transportation in the interest of information exchange. The United States Government assumes no liability for its contents or use thereof. The United States Government does not endorse products of manufacturers. Trade or manufacturers’ names appear herein solely because they are considered essential to the objective of this report.

This Handbook is intended to be a general reference document for use by public transportation agencies responsible for the management of capital projects involving construction of a transit facility or system.

This document is disseminated under the sponsorship of the U.S. Department of Transportation in the interest of information exchange. The United States Government and the Contractor, Gannett Fleming, Inc., assume no liability for the contents or use thereof.

The United States Government does not endorse manufacturers or products. Trade or manufacturers names appear herein solely because they are considered essential to the objective of this report.
# Metric Conversion Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>WHEN YOU KNOW</th>
<th>MULTIPLY BY</th>
<th>TO FIND</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LENGTH</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>inches</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>millimeters</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ft</td>
<td>feet</td>
<td>0.305</td>
<td>meters</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yd</td>
<td>yards</td>
<td>0.914</td>
<td>meters</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>kilometers</td>
<td>km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VOLUME</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fl oz</td>
<td>fluid ounces</td>
<td>29.57</td>
<td>milliliters</td>
<td>mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gal</td>
<td>gallons</td>
<td>3.785</td>
<td>liters</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ft³</td>
<td>cubic feet</td>
<td>0.028</td>
<td>cubic meters</td>
<td>m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yd³</td>
<td>cubic yards</td>
<td>0.765</td>
<td>cubic meters</td>
<td>m³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: volumes greater than 1000 L shall be shown in m³

| **MASS** |                |             |             |        |
| oz      | ounces         | 28.35       | grams       | g      |
| lb      | pounds         | 0.454       | kilograms   | kg     |
| T       | short tons (2000 lb) | 0.907     | megagrams (or "metric tons") | Mg (or "t") |

| **TEMPERATURE (exact degrees)** |                |             |             |        |
| °F | Fahrenheit | 5 (F-32)/9 or (F-32)/1.8 | Celsius | °C |

The purpose of the FTA Construction Project Management Handbook is to provide guidelines for use by public transit agencies (Agencies) undertaking substantial construction projects, either for the first time or with little prior experience with construction project management. It provides a comprehensive introduction to construction project management, including the applicability of the principles of project management and of all phases of project development – from project initiation through planning, environmental clearance, real estate acquisition, design, construction, commissioning, and closeout. This Handbook provides guidance similar to that in earlier documents but tailored more to agencies that are constructing maintenance and operational facilities, intermodal terminals, park-and-ride stations, and other similar supporting transit facilities. Throughout the sections, project management concepts are illustrated with the use of a hypothetical example, a typical project to plan, design, and build a new bus maintenance facility.
# CONTENTS

**Section 1. Introduction**
- Purpose of the Handbook .......................................................... 1
- What is a Project? ....................................................................... 3
- Principles of Project Management ............................................. 10

**Section 2. Capital Projects Planning**
- Purpose of this Section ............................................................. 12
- Integrate Agency Goals into Capital Improvement Plan .......... 14
- Evaluate and Select Capital Assets for Capital Improvement Plan ................................................................. 16
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources ...................... 19

**Section 3. Project Initiation**
- Purpose of this Section ............................................................. 20
- Defining the Project .................................................................. 21
- Planning the Project .................................................................. 22
- Contract Management Planning .............................................. 32
- Safety and Security Management Planning .............................. 33
- Other Requirements .................................................................. 35
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources ...................... 37

**Section 4. Planning, Environmental Clearance, Real Estate Acquisition**
- Planning Studies ....................................................................... 40
- Environmental Compliance ..................................................... 43
- Real Estate Acquisition and Relocation .................................. 53
- Entitlement ................................................................................. 54
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources ...................... 54

**Section 5. Design**
- Purpose of this Section ............................................................. 56
- Design Phases .......................................................................... 58
- Design Management ................................................................... 62
- Design Reviews ......................................................................... 63
- Third-Party Coordination ......................................................... 65
- Value Engineering ..................................................................... 66
- Peer Reviews ............................................................................. 68
- Constructability Reviews .......................................................... 68
- Risk Assessment ....................................................................... 69
- Quality Assurance and Quality Control ................................. 72
- Sustainability (Green Building) Standards and Design .......... 73
- Sustainability (Green Building) Certification ......................... 75
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources ...................... 76
### Section 6. Construction

- Construction Management .................................................. 79
- Third-Party Coordination ....................................................... 88
- Quality Management ............................................................... 89
- Safety Management During Construction .............................. 91
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources ...................... 92

### Section 7. Commissioning

- The Commissioning Plan ......................................................... 96
- Owner-Furnished Equipment .................................................. 98
- Integrated Testing and Start-Up ............................................. 99
- Safety and Security Certification ............................................ 99
- Operational and Maintenance Manuals ................................. 101
- Training and Transition to Operations ................................. 102
- As-Built Documentation ....................................................... 102
- External Stakeholder Reviews .............................................. 103
- Post-Delivery Audit for Rolling Stock .................................. 103
- Warranty Administration ...................................................... 103
- Where to Find Additional Help and Resources .................... 103

### Section 8. Project Closeout

- Contractual Closeout ........................................................... 104
- Administrative Closeout ....................................................... 106
- Where to Find Additional Closeout Help and Resources .... 107

### Section 9. Project Support

- Project Control .................................................................... 104
- Project Administration ......................................................... 104
- Procurement and Contract Administration .......................... 104
- Project Communications ....................................................... 104
- Records Management ............................................................ 104

### Section 10. Appendices

- Appendix A: FTA Office Locations ....................................... 129
- Appendix B: Checklist - Readiness to Enter Engineering .... 132
- Appendix C: Checklist - Readiness to Execute SSGA/FFGA .. 140
- Appendix D: References ....................................................... 156
- Appendix E: Acronyms .......................................................... 164
- Index ..................................................................................... 166
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1-1</td>
<td>Project without a Project Manager</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1-2</td>
<td>Project with a Project Manager</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1-3</td>
<td>Typical Project Life Cycle – Traditional Design/Bid/Build</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2-1</td>
<td>Capital Improvement Planning Process</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2-2</td>
<td>Capital Improvement Plan</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2-3</td>
<td>Components of a Capital Improvement Plan</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2-4</td>
<td>Financial Plan – Balance Funding Sources to Capital Improvement Plan Capital Expenditures</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-1</td>
<td>Project Requirements Definition</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-2</td>
<td>Typical Engineering and Construction Project Resource Needs</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-3</td>
<td>Project Delivery Strategies</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-4</td>
<td>Sharing of Control and Risk Between Owner and Contractor for Alternative Delivery Strategies</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-5</td>
<td>Project Management Plan Outline</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4-1</td>
<td>Typical Project Development Process Overview</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4-2</td>
<td>Information Required for Probable Categorical Exclusion Projects (23 CFR Section 771.117(d))</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4-3</td>
<td>NEPA Process: An Overview</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4-4</td>
<td>Acquisition Process</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5-1</td>
<td>Design Criteria Document Online</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5-2</td>
<td>Design Review Comment Register</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5-3</td>
<td>Value Engineering Study Task Flow Diagram</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5-4</td>
<td>Example of a Risk Register</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6-1</td>
<td>Project Organization, Assigned Authorities, and Lines of Communication for Construction</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6-2</td>
<td>Agency and Construction Manager Functions During Construction</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6-3</td>
<td>Changes During Construction/Contractor Compensation</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6-4</td>
<td>Guidelines for Managing Communications</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7-1</td>
<td>Typical Responsibility Matrix for Commissioning Tasks (Design- Bid-Build Delivery)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7-2</td>
<td>Typical Equipment Commissioning List</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7-3</td>
<td>Typical O&amp;M Manual Content</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9-1</td>
<td>Project Control Triangle</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9-2</td>
<td>Work Breakdown Structure, Maintenance Facility Project</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9-3</td>
<td>Cost Control Report, Maintenance Facility Project</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9-4</td>
<td>Precedence Diagram and Critical Path, Maintenance Facility Project</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9-5</td>
<td>Typical Baseline Documents</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOREWORD
The Federal Transit Administration (FTA) sponsored and developed the Construction Project Management Handbook to provide guidelines to public transit agencies undertaking substantial construction projects either for the first time or with little experience in construction management. Gannett Fleming, Inc., a national engineering and construction firm, developed this Handbook under contract to and with guidance from the FTA Office of Technology. Project managers consisted of Dale Wegner of FTA and Kam Shadan, P.E., of Gannett Fleming, Inc.

This Handbook provides comprehensive coverage of construction project management, including the applicability of the principles of project management and of all phases of project development in sequence and in separate sections – from project initiation through planning, environmental clearance, real estate acquisition, design, construction, commissioning, and closeout. The Handbook will be of use to transit agencies and their consultants, the FTA Regional Offices, and others responsible for the management of capital projects involving construction of transit facilities or systems. The study is organized to provide the transit agency and the project manager with a clearer understanding of the applicability of the structures and principles of construction project management.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS
The FTA Construction Project Management Handbook update was sponsored and managed by FTA’s Office of Technology. The lead author for the update was Kam Shadan of Gannett Fleming, Inc., a national engineering and construction management firm with specialized expertise in transit project planning, design, and construction. Others providing specialized input included: William Plumpton (Gannett Fleming), Michael Eidlin (Kal Krishnan Consulting Services), David Sillars (Sillars), Paul Krogh (K2 Construction Consultants), Dain Pankratz (Boyd Caton & Grant), Robin Hazy (Raul V. Bravo + Associates), Lee Hamre (H.C. Peck & Associates), and Kate Berrigan (Gannett Fleming), technical editor.

Throughout this update, FTA’s Dale Wegner provided significant review and content modifications. Selected FTA subject matter experts were asked to review various sections of the initial draft of the Handbook and offer comments, and did so to varying degree with comments taken into consideration.
1. Introduction

Purpose of the Handbook

Introduction

The purpose of this Handbook is to provide guidelines for use by public transit agencies (Agencies, also referred to as Project Sponsors) undertaking substantial construction projects, either for the first time or with little prior experience with construction project management. It provides a comprehensive introduction to construction project management, including the applicability of the principles of project management and of all phases of capital improvement projects – from project initiation through planning, environmental clearance, real estate acquisition, design, construction, commissioning, and closeout.

The Federal Transit Administration (FTA) maintains oversight of grant projects and assigns grant administration and management responsibility to the transit Agencies, who then are responsible for planning, managing, and implementing the federally funded project. Agency project managers need handy tools for project management to make certain that projects are effectively contracted for, completed on time and within budget, and comply with all project specifications. This Handbook is intended to assist the Agency’s responsible project manager or lead person to undertake multi-million-dollar construction projects and manage the complexities of specifying, acquiring, and managing contracts for such projects through utilization of in-house and consultant resources.

This Handbook complements the many circulars and publications available on the FTA website and through the National Transit Institute, in particular: FTA Lessons-Learned documents, Construction Project Management Guidelines, Best Practices Procurement Manual (BPPM), Quality Management System Guidelines, and the Manual for the National Transit Institute (NTI) course entitled “Management of Transit Construction Projects.”

This Handbook is intended to be used as initial general guidance by transit Agencies and the FTA regional offices that may be contacted for help. Throughout the sections, project management concepts are illustrated with the use of a hypothetical example, a typical project to plan, design, and build a new bus maintenance facility.
How to Use the Handbook
This introductory section defines a project and states principles of project management. Section 2 discusses the capital improvement planning process to provide a better understanding of how projects are created. Sections 3–8 cover the phases of the project in sequence from project initiation, through planning, environmental clearance, real estate acquisition, design, construction, commissioning, and closeout. Section 9 addresses project-wide functions that take place throughout the project life cycle.

Each section begins by describing the purpose of the section and includes a checklist of important things to do. The subsections within a section include key points of important things to know about project management that are discussed in more detail in the text and supported by pictures, graphics, tables, and charts.

How to Work with the FTA
Generally, the FTA regional office or metropolitan office responsible for your area will take the lead in providing the necessary guidance. Each FTA regional office has personnel assigned for support in areas such as grants, planning, environment, procurement, program management, and legal. The project manager should establish contact with the FTA office and staff that are responsible for the Agency’s project.

How to Contact the FTA
FTA’s regional and metropolitan offices are responsible for the implementation of grants and the provision of financial assistance to FTA customers, other than specific programs that are the responsibility of headquarters. Inquiries should be directed to either the regional or metropolitan office responsible for the geographic area in which the Agency is located.

To locate the FTA office responsible for serving your region, please see a listing of FTA offices in the reference section at the end of this Handbook or visit the FTA website.
What is a Project?

Definition of a Project

A project is made up of a group of interrelated work activities constrained by a specific scope, budget, and schedule to deliver capital assets needed to achieve the strategic goals of an Agency. This Handbook is intended for management of capital projects involving construction of facilities or systems. The word project is synonymous with the words capital project throughout this Handbook.

Project Manager’s Role

A project’s execution is planned and controlled by the project manager. The project manager is assigned by the Agency, i.e., the Agency’s executive management. The project manager must have adequate authority to exercise the responsibility of forming and managing a team for support of the project. The project manager must have prior experience managing similar projects in the past. If an Agency cannot commit such an individual with adequate time and resources, the Agency is well advised to outsource project management services for management of the project. The project manager may be tasked with management of multiple projects that may require assignment of additional project managers for support. In such cases, the project manager is taking on the role of a program manager. Figure 1-1 shows typical project activities without a project manager. It shows the multiple interactions an Agency faces without a project manager to manage the work activities involved in delivering a new capital asset. Figure 1-2 depicts a typical project organization with a project manager. It shows how a project management organization is structured with the assignment of a project manager to manage project work activities.
Figure 1-1 Project with a Project Manager
SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION

Note: Depending on the project, there may be a need for a professional not listed in the chart, such as an archeologist, etc.

Figure 1-2  *Project with a Project Manager*
Characteristics of Projects

Projects are defined by their scope, schedule, and budget. For example, an Agency is to undertake a project to design and build a new maintenance facility for its fleet of buses (scope), at an estimate of $30 million (budget) over a three-year period (schedule). The schedule specifies a defined beginning and end. Projects go through a life cycle of phases between their beginnings and ends that for construction projects are typically: initiation, planning, design, construction, commissioning, and closeout.

Scope: Each project is unique and must have a written requirements document that takes into consideration operational needs, level of service, regulatory requirements such as Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Buy America Act, and quality of deliverables. The scope evolves as new information becomes available through the project life cycle. For example, in the early planning phases of the maintenance facility project, the scope is to have five service bays. Later, as the design progresses, the exact location and the type of service in each bay can be determined. Scope refinement should not be confused with scope creep. Scope creep occurs when the Agency determines part way through the project that operational projections now call for six rather than five service bays. Changing to six bays after the project is underway is a serious change in scope that could impact the budget (larger facility, more land, and redesign) and delay the schedule (replan, environmental compliance, redesign, and longer construction). Scope refinement is a necessary process in the project life cycle while scope creep results from lack of clarity on the Agency’s requirements in the original scope for the needs, level of service, and level of quality for the deliverables.

Schedule: All projects must have a definite beginning and end. The Agency’s Capital Improvement Plan (CIP) usually provides approximate dates for the beginning of a project and the end date when it is due to go into operation. Once there is a well-defined scope, the Agency needs to determine the time it will take to complete the project by developing the project schedule. Developing the schedule involves breaking down the work into manageable activities needed to accomplish the scope of each deliverable, estimating the duration of each activity, and placing them in a logical sequence. Section 9 describes useful techniques for developing a schedule. The result is a project schedule that tells you the expected duration of the project and the logical relationships between the activities, including activities on the “critical path,” that control the end date.

Budget: All projects are constrained by limited monetary funding resources. Consequently, every project needs a budget to initially define its funding requirement. The budget usually provides the preliminary project funding that is established through a CIP, covered in Section 2. The project manager develops the budget based on the cost estimates at the beginning of each project phase and refines it once there is better information defining the scope. Refining the budget occurs through studies and analysis in the design
development process through the performing sufficient level of engineering appropriate for the project phase. When Agencies try to fix the budget too early in the project life cycle, they are surprised by the significant increases in the budget over what was set forth in the CIP. As explained later, the budget should not be fixed as baseline until after completion of the environmental process and sufficient level of engineering and design to define scope, cost and schedule including ROW, third-party and utility relocation impacts. Estimating techniques for the costs of the activities needed to accomplish the scope of each deliverable are covered in Section 9.

What Is a Sufficient Level of Design?
Throughout the body of this Handbook, reference is made to sufficient level of engineering and design. The following provides guidance on the definition of the sufficient level of engineering and design for various phases of a project.

1. Prior to Completion of National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) Process
   Adequate level of engineering and design to identify and define all mitigation measures and allow preparation of a complete mitigation monitoring plan and a cost estimate with an adequate level of contingency to allow for changes due to design development.

2. Concurrent with the Completion of NEPA but before Entry into Engineering (New Starts and Core Capacity)
   At least 30 percent design and engineering, including documents at the level of detail described in the Final Interim Policy Guidance - FTA Capital Investment Grant Program (CIG) of August 2015. This includes an adequate level of engineering to define project key design features, including satisfactory progress in advancing the project design and a corresponding and up-to-date cost estimate and schedule. At a minimum, the level of design detail should be as described in FTA’s Checklist for Approval to Enter Engineering. The supporting capital cost estimate must be based on quantities of work established in the drawings and a substantial level of cost line item detail and backup for all other costs (vehicles, equipment, real estate, professional services, unallocated allocated contingency, and financing costs). At a minimum, the level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix B.

3. Concurrent with Engineering But Before Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) (New Starts and Core Capacity)
   Consistent with Final Interim Policy Guidance - FTA CIG of August 2015, an adequate level engineering to define project key design features appropriate for the designated delivery method (D/B, D/B/B, and/or CM/GC), including satisfactory progress in advancing the project design and corresponding and up-to-date baseline cost estimate, risk analysis, schedule, and project management plans and sub-plans. The level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix C.
4. After Completion of NEPA before entry into a Small Starts Grant Agreement (SSGA)

Consistent with FTA’s Final Interim Policy Guidance - CIG of August 2015, an adequate level engineering to define project key design features appropriate for the designated delivery method (D/B, D/B/B, and/or CM/GC), including satisfactory progress in advancing the project design and corresponding and up-to-date cost estimate and schedule. At a minimum, the level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix C.

Project Life Cycle

A project is conceived through the organization’s strategic planning process and documented in a Capital Improvement Plan (CIP). The main reasons projects are created are to deliver capital assets the Agency needs to:

1. Sustain service or improve quality of service
2. Expand service to meet growing demand
3. Comply with regulatory requirements

A CIP consists of a number of planned projects that when implemented will provide the Agency with the assets needed to achieve its strategic objectives. A project begins its life cycle when it is authorized to move from the CIP into implementation. For an Agency, authorization is often a resolution approved by the Agency’s board to apply for funds or hire consultants to work on the project. The board resolution is the project’s authorization to proceed to the next phase. In most cases, the Agency will have to come back to the board prior to beginning the next phase of the project, because the scope and costs will be more defined through the efforts made in the preceding phases.

In a traditional design/bid/build (D/B/B) project, the project life cycle begins with the initiation of planning (including environmental and funding), and design (including conceptual design). These phases overlap to some extent. During these phases the project evolves through consideration of various alternatives and the concept for the preferred alternative is formed. The design phase continues through the sufficient engineering and design effort to further analyze, validate, and define the preferred alternative and arrive at the baseline scope, budget, and schedule. Then the design phase concludes with more details of the design features to provide the permitting agencies and the contractor a set of construction drawings and specifications to permit and build the project. The construction phase proceeds with the bid and award process. At the end of the construction phase, the work of the contractor needs to be integrated with operations and Agency furnished activities, technology, and equipment, and evaluated for acceptance through the commissioning phase to bring the project to a successful completion. Figure 1-3 shows a typical project life cycle for traditional D/B/B delivery.
There are many alternative delivery methods, such as design/build (D/B), construction manager/general contractor (CM/GC), and design/build/operate/maintain (D/B/O/M). These delivery methods assign multiple phases of work, such as design and construction, to a single contractor. In the D/B/O/M method, the Agency also contracts out the operations and maintenance (O&M) of the completed project to the contractor.
Principles of Project Management

Project Management Objectives

The objectives of project management are to execute a project so that deliverables can meet scope requirements on budget and schedule, and at acceptable risk, quality, safety, security levels, and life cycle costs. The example maintenance facility project is to deliver a five-bay facility that meets predetermined performance specifications within the three-year schedule.

Many times, project objectives compete with each other and require skillful balancing throughout the project life cycle by the project manager. For example, unexpected soil conditions delay the maintenance facility construction contractor. The schedule can be made up by paying additional costs for contractor overtime to make up the delay. This is a cost/schedule trade-off.

The greatest threat to project success is scope creep. The addition of a sixth bay to the maintenance facility we mentioned earlier is a clear example of added scope. Often projects face more subtle scope creep because the project manager allows the users to “piggy back” additional requirements on the project. For example, it may be that originally in the CIP process the maintenance of non-revenue vehicles was to be done in a different location. During the project life cycle, the lease on the non-revenue location was lost and the maintenance department wants them maintained at a new bay at the new facility. The project manager will need to address such changes through retracing of the CIP process and obtaining new project authorization.

In addition to scope, budget, and schedule, it is extremely important that the project manager facilitates a discussion of the project risk, quality, and safety and security objectives, and incorporates the outcome in the Project Management Plan (PMP). Projects require well-defined configuration management, change control systems, and procedures for scope and change control, as described in Section 9.

Project Management Process

The project management process begins with identification of the user requirement, project constraints, resource needs, and establishment of realistic objectives to meet the strategic goals. Many times this will be an iterative process as new information becomes available through efforts by various professionals on the project and input from third parties, communities, users, and agencies having jurisdiction.
The strategic goals that relate to capital projects are summarized in CIPs. Many times this information is in the Agency’s short-range and long-range transit plans. The approval of the project by the governing body will establish the project authorization. The project manager uses the project authorization to develop project management plans for implementation of the project.

The project manager must have prior experience (or should consult with peers with prior experience) with the particular project type to balance the above competing objectives in a timely manner to adequately plan the project. Lack of prior experience will increase risks of not achieving the project objectives. In Section 3, we discuss project authorization and the PMP. In addition to scope, budget, and schedule, it is extremely important that the project manager facilitates a discussion of the project risk, quality, and safety and security objectives for the project and incorporates the outcome in the PMP.

Project Management Training
If one is going to be responsible for project management, additional training may be desired. Courses in Project Management are available from several sources including the Project Management Institute, college extension courses, and the National Transit Institute (NTI).

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources
Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
Capital Projects Planning

Purpose of this Section

Introduction

It is important to understand how projects are developed. This section discusses the process for developing a Capital Improvement Plan (CIP) including: how a CIP is prepared, the organization needed to support a CIP, the identification of capital asset needs, how to prioritize projects within a CIP, financial planning to balance capital expenditures with other uses of funds and sources of available funding, and ways in which projects are authorized.

Project Development

During project development (PD), the Agency identifies the need for a project, assesses the project’s ranking in importance relative to other projects, analyzes its funding requirements, and decides whether to authorize the project for implementation. Planning how to manage an authorized project is discussed in Section 3.

The Agency’s mission, vision, and resulting strategic plan govern the development of the CIP. The strategic plan looks to the Agency’s mission that in turn defines its vision for the future and the strategies it will adopt to achieve the mission’s goals and objectives. The Agency can then determine what assets it needs to accomplish its strategies and identify any gaps between its existing and needed assets. Simply stated, a capital project is developed as a means of filling the gap between the needed and the existing assets. The CIP is a prioritized list of projects to meet the Agency’s capital asset needs. Figure 2-1 depicts the CIP process.

Not all projects in a CIP can be immediately implemented due to funding and other constraints. The Agency has to rank the relative importance of the projects and make hard choices to select which projects can be implemented, and which must be deferred along with the strategic objectives that depend on them. This part of the project development process requires a careful balancing of project costs against available financing and is a complex mix of public policy, public financing, and capital and operational budgeting.
**Important to Do**

- Assess assets needed to achieve Agency goals.
- Identify gaps between needed and current assets.
- Evaluate alternatives to filling asset gaps.
- Adopt a standard project review/approval framework.
- Establish criteria to rank and select projects.
- Maintain a long-term capital improvement plan.
- Balance capital needs to funding sources.
- Authorize projects in useful segments.

**Role of Agency and Consultant Staff in Project Development**

Strategic planning and the CIP process is the responsibility of the Agency’s senior executive supported by its planning, engineering, and financial staff with information input by operating departments. Due to the long-term nature of Agency strategies and capital projects, FTA’s Final Interim Guidance for Transit Financial Plans (2015) calls for a CIP planning horizon of either 10 or 20 years.

Depending on the size of the Agency, a number of new capital projects may be authorized for implementation in the upcoming financial year. The budget to complete each newly authorized project is identified and the financing needed over the project life is committed. The budget for the upcoming year includes funding to cover new and continuing projects. Figure 2-2 shows a typical CIP.

The Agency may choose to retain the services of qualified consultants to assist in strategic planning; applying to local, state, and federal levels of government for funding; securing funding through debt and innovative financing; and preparing a CIP. The role of the consultant is to assist the Agency planning, finance, and operations staff to prepare the CIP by providing specialized expertise and experience not available within the Agency staff organization. The services could include preparation of the required Project Management Plan (PMP) and sub-plans.
Figure 2-2  Capital Improvement Plan

Integrate Agency Goals into Capital Improvement Plan

If you are charged with managing the Agency's project development process, it is important that you ensure that the resulting CIP is consistent with the Agency's goals. Steps you should take to integrate the Agency goals into the CIP include:

- Assessing the capital resources needed to achieve the Agency’s goals
- Identifying gaps between current and needed capital resources
- Evaluating alternative approaches to filling the gaps.

Success in assessing capital resource needs requires you to first confirm that the Agency’s goals and objectives align with the Agency’s mission. To do this you will need to put in place a strategic planning process where the Agency’s policy setting executive can re-examine the Agency’s mission in response to changing needs in community requirements, government mandates, board priorities, operations, and organizational strengths and weaknesses; and set policy goals and objectives consistent with the mission. With the goals and objectives in place, you can then assess what capital resources the Agency will need to accomplish each goal and objective.

To identify any gaps between current and needed resources you will need an inventory of current capital assets. MAP-21 created a National Transit Asset Management (TAM) System to help bring the nation’s transit assets into a State of Good Repair (SGR). The FTA website has links to a variety of resources to assist Agencies in developing and maintaining a transit asset management system. Two noteworthy publications include:
SECTION 2: CAPITAL PROJECTS PLANNING

• Transit Asset Condition Reporting, TCRP Synthesis 92, Transportation Research Board, 2011

Soliciting the opinions of operations, maintenance, and engineering personnel who work directly with a current asset will provide you with a good source of information on the use and performance of an asset usually defined in terms of:

• Asset type, location, and status
• Physical condition and maintenance needs
• Use and level of performance
• Ownership of the asset when the service is contracted out

Comparing resources available with resources needed will enable you to identify any gaps and begin planning to fill them.

As part of the project development process, it is prudent to consider a range of alternatives for filling identified asset gaps. Not all strategic needs have to be filled with assets that are owned and operated by the Agency. In many cases, it may be beneficial to outsource work or lease facilities. In our example maintenance facility project, it may be more beneficial to outsource heavy body work and painting to a local paint facility and avoid building a paint and body shop that does not get much use. Alternatively, adjacent Agencies may want to pool resources for certain functions and perform the work in shared facilities. Alternatives that you should consider to fill asset gaps include:

• Construct the capital asset
• Purchase the asset
• Modify and/or renovate an existing asset(s)
• Contract out the activity the asset would support
• Lease the asset
• Share the asset with adjacent agencies
• Privatize the activity the asset would support

When the first of these options, constructing the capital asset, is selected, then the project is added to the list of candidate projects for the Agency’s CIP.

Returning to our example maintenance facility scenario, the project had been put forward for development to support the Agency’s mission to provide quality transit service to the community. The Agency’s service area was experiencing rapid growth due to a population expansion that is predicted to continue in the immediate future. To adequately serve the community, the size of the bus fleet is predicted to double. The existing maintenance facility is too small to effectively handle the predicted fleet size, and its antiquated facilities and equipment would also need updating to support maintenance of
a modern fleet. As alternatives to constructing a new facility, the Agency also examined the option of expanding and renovating the existing facility and the option of contracting out the maintenance operations. Cost-benefit analysis over the life cycle of the maintenance facility demonstrated that constructing a new facility was the best option because the higher operating costs of a renovated facility outweighed the lower capital costs of renovation, and the absence of competition of experienced service providers if the maintenance were contracted out resulted in a high risk of unreliable contracted-out service and high service prices.

Evaluate and Select Capital Assets for Capital Improvement Plan

Managing the selection of which capital assets to develop and, correspondingly, which projects to implement requires the Agency to:

- Adopt a standard review and approval framework
- Use established criteria to rank and select projects
- Maintain a long-term CIP

You can create a standard review and approval framework for your Agency by establishing some form of standard "Project Request Package" for review by the Agency’s management responsible for its CIP. The topics to be addressed in a “Project Request Package” include:

- Project overview
- Benefits discussed in terms of support of Agency goals and objectives (addressing asset gap)
- Economic assessment (net present value, full life cycle cost, and funding requirement)
- Financing (grant, debt, and/or innovative financing)
- Project budget estimate
- Major milestones and deliverables
- Risk assessment

With the above standard review and approval framework in place, criteria can be established with which to rank the projects. Ranking is necessary because public Agencies rarely, if ever, have sufficient funds to undertake all proposed projects. The highest ranked projects for which proposed funds are available can then be inserted into the Agency’s CIP as proposed projects to join ongoing authorized capital projects. Figure 2-3 shows the relationships among CIP components as presented in the FTA Guidance for Transit Financial Plans.
Fund and Authorize Projects

Financial Planning

Limited available funding requires the Agency’s CIP to carefully balance the full costs of the projects within the CIP against the available funds both over the long-term and on a year-by-year basis.

It is important that the CIP includes the full costs and funding requirement for projects when making decisions on which projects to select for authorization based on their ranking. Knowledge of a project’s full costs and funding requirement is necessary to assess the financial impact in future years of implementing the project, and the Agency can verify that it has the financial resources to complete all authorized projects. It also allows the Agency’s decision makers to compare the long-term costs and funding requirements of alternative projects of similar ranking to better understand the financial consequences of the CIP decisions.

The financial planning that balances the CIP’s sources and uses of funds also needs to take into account uses of funds for debt service and the balance of funds from operations. Figure 2-4 shows a typical CIP financial plan incorporating debt service and balance from operations.

Staged Authorization

It is frequently beneficial to manage the authorization of projects in stages. Staged authorization is when project funding and implementation are authorized to take the project to a certain stage of completion. On reaching this stage, the project is re-reviewed within the context of the CIP and a further decision is made as to whether or not to authorize the next stage of a project. Stages are selected based on completing a useful segment of the project that either:

- Provides better information on the costs, risks, and benefits of the project before committing the Agency to the full project costs and funding, or
- Delivers a component of the total project that itself is a useful asset that fills an identified asset gap where the resulting benefits exceed the staged project costs.
In our example maintenance facility project, two authorization stages were planned. The first stage was to authorize the project to the completion of project development. At that point, the Agency would gain better information on the project’s cost, the Agency’s ability to fund the project, and the Agency’s plan and ability to manage the project through the engineering and construction phases. With this information in hand, the Agency will re-review the project and determine whether to commit its resources to design and construction. The second stage was to complete the design and construction of the example maintenance facility but defer installation of the paint booth until additional funding became available in future years. The Agency determined that completion of the components of the maintenance facility excluding the paint booth resulted in operational benefits that exceeded the project costs.

### FTA Funding Requirements

The funding plan for our example maintenance facility project included the receipt of FTA grant funds to share a portion of the project costs. Receipt of FTA funds for a project places certain requirements and conditions on the Agency as summarized below:

- Legal filing with the FTA of documents describing the Agency’s statutory authority, authorized powers, and eligibility to receive federal funds
- Assurance of compliance with Civil Rights – Title VI nondiscrimination
- Civil Rights Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) Plan and Annual Goal
- Civil Rights Equal Employment Opportunity Plan
- FTA Annual Certifications and Assurances

---

**Figure 2-4  Financial Plan – Balance Funding Sources to Capital Improvement Plan Capital Expenditures**
Important to Know

Knowledge of a project’s full cost and funding is necessary to assess its financial impact.

Financial planning for capital expenditures also needs to consider debt service and the balance of funds from operations.

Use of federal funds on a project places certain obligations and conditions on the Agency.

• Qualification-Based Selection is required for procurement of architects and engineers services under the Brooks Act (Public Law 92-582)
• The Davis-Bacon Act establishes local prevailing wages for construction workers on federally funded projects (40 U.S.C. 3141 et seq)
• Use of FTA’s Transit Award Management System (TrAMS) to apply for grants and submit required quarterly financial and narrative reports
• Use of FTA’s Electronic Clearing House Operation (ECHO) computer system to draw down grant funds for reimbursement of project expenses
• Grant application containing the following project information
  - Description of project
  - Planning of project in Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP)
  - Environmental compliance in accordance with National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), as discussed further in Section 4, and related laws, regulations, and Executive Orders
  - Description of transit system in the Agency’s service area
  - Other requirements stated in the FTA’s CIG Program Final Interim Policy Guidance of August 2015 and related circulars

Project Authorization Documentation

The final step in managing the project development process is to formally document the authorization of the project using a project authorization document. Concurrent with preparing the project authorization, it is good practice to assign the project manager to the project so that, with the project authorization in hand, the project manager can begin planning the management of the project’s implementation, as discussed in Section 3.

The project authorization documents the information generated during the project development process together with the Agency’s decision to implement the project including:

• The topics addressed in the “Project Request Package” that resulted in the project being selected, incorporated into the CIP, and authorized for implementation
• Attachment or reference to Agency decision to implement the project (such as Board action item)
• Description of project
• Summary budget and funding
• Summary milestone schedule
• Assigned project manager
• Authority delegated to project manager

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
3. Project Initiation

Purpose of this Section

Introduction

In this section, we turn our attention on how to plan an authorized project. We will discuss two important project planning documents: (1) the Project Requirements Definition (PRD) that documents what the project will deliver, alternatively referred to in the literature as the Statement of Work; and (2) the Project Management Plan (PMP) that documents how the project is to be delivered. We will also look at the use of supporting planning documents, including the quality management, risk management, and contract plans.

Project Initiation Phase

During project initiation, the Agency plans how the authorized project is to be implemented. Planning begins by fleshing out what the project is to deliver and documenting the result in the PRD. The Agency then considers what approach to take to manage and carry out the work to implement the project, selects the project delivery method, assesses the type and size of resources needed for the project, and documents these in the PMP. Planning concludes with establishing the selected project management organization through the assignment of Agency staff to the project and retaining of a Program Management Consultant (PMC) for the project management work where the Agency does not have staff resources with the necessary skill and experience.

Role of the Agency in Project Initiation

Planning the project in the initiation phase is usually the Agency’s sole responsibility, carried out by the Agency’s project manager. However, if the project is of such a size and complexity that the Agency is unsure how to plan its implementation, the Agency can retain a PMC during this phase.

Role of the Program Management Consultant

Where an Agency lacks the necessary project management expertise and resources, the Agency retains a PMC to:

• Advise on project planning and delivery together with the production of the PRD, PMP, and associated documents.
• Provide project management services during the subsequent project implementation phases.
Role of the State Safety Oversight (SSO) Agency

The SSO agencies are to coordinate with the Project Sponsor Agency throughout the project development as outlined in the SSMP. 49 U.S.C. 5329 requires SSO oversight of transit projects, specifically during engineering and construction phases prior to start-up.

Defining the Project

Project Requirements Definition

The Agency assigns a project manager to lead an authorized project. The project authorization is the project manager’s corporate authority to implement the project and gives the project manager a broad narrative description of the project’s goals and objectives. (Section 2 discusses project authorization and project manager assignment.) The project manager’s task now is to prepare the PRD.

In the PRD, the project manager refines and details the project authorization and details what the project is required to accomplish in terms of the products/services the project will deliver and the statement (or scope) of work (SOW) that needs to be done. Figure 3-1 describes these and other topics a PRD should address. This necessitates addressing the interface of the project requirements with relevant agency plans including its system wide infrastructure management plan. Through a well-written PRD, the project manager provides project team members, corporate sponsors, and other stakeholders with a common understanding of what the project is all about, and is the authoritative reference document that defines the project. Review and acceptance of the PRD by the Agency’s executive responsible for the project’s authorization helps make certain that the executive, the project manager, and the project team have a common understanding of the project’s objectives. Whether by formal sign-off or less formal email, it is important that the project manager receives a record of the acceptance of the PRD by the Agency’s executive so there is no misunderstanding at the outset of what the project is intended to accomplish.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>A governmental entity responsible for providing transit services to the public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Sponsor: An entity who is applying for or have been given a grant to implement a capital project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization</td>
<td>Reference to project authorization that selected and authorized the project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stakeholders</td>
<td>Corporate sponsors, customers, third parties impacted, project team, and federal and state oversight personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deliverables</td>
<td>Products/services the project will deliver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope of Work</td>
<td>Work to be done to deliver the products/services (high-level summary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Estimate</td>
<td>Initial order of magnitude estimate of the project budget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule Milestones</td>
<td>Initial project schedule in terms of key project milestones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance</td>
<td>Project financial requirements and sources of funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risks</td>
<td>Threats to the project (e.g., adverse environmental factors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resources</td>
<td>Resources needed to accomplish the project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constraints</td>
<td>Constraints such as limited resources/funding, sites available, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptance Criteria</td>
<td>What determines acceptable products/services and their approval</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 3-1  Project Requirements Definition**

**Planning the Project**

**Capability and Capacity Assessment**

The project manager assesses the levels of resource capabilities and capacities needed to accomplish the project defined by the PRD. Capability is a measure of a resource’s skill levels, experience, and ability to perform. Capacity is a measure of the quantity of the resources. The project manager may need to consult with peers or consultants who have prior experience with similar projects to accurately determine the necessary resources. Figure 3-2 shows the typical resource capabilities needed for an engineering and construction project such as the example bus maintenance facility project.
### Capability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management and Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Management</td>
<td>Manage the overall project and its phases – initiation, planning, design,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>construction, and closeout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oversight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oversee project performance by a party independent of the project team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and report to project sponsor(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control changes to project deliverables/scope of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control project costs within budget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control project progress within schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Record project expenditures, issue payments, and manage project funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement/Administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Procure and administer project contracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality Management: Safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prepare a Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Safety Oversight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coordinate with SSO as specified in the SSMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Records Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capture, store, control, and retrieve project records/documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning, Engineering,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Technical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural</td>
<td>Develop architectural and design concepts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>Prepare detailed engineering and final design documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>Undertake environmental planning and clearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real Estate</td>
<td>Acquire real estate and perform relocation functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communications</td>
<td>Communicate with the community/media/government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction and Supply</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Contractor</td>
<td>Construct facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third-Party Agency</td>
<td>Relocate or gain access to public and private utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment Supplier</td>
<td>Supply/install equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 3-2** *Typical Engineering and Construction Project Resource Needs*
Project Delivery Strategy

For Agencies that infrequently undertake capital projects, the project manager will almost certainly find that the required levels of capability and capacity are not available within the Agency’s own forces. The project manager has to look outside the organization and plan a project delivery strategy that contracts out the work that the Agency lacks the capability and capacity to undertake.

A project delivery strategy determines the:

- Work done by the Agency and the work that is contracted out to consultant and/or construction contractors.
- Degree of control the Agency maintains over how the work is done and the control transferred to contractors through contracting out.
- Assignment of risks associated with the project work undertaken by the Agency and contractors.

What alternative delivery strategies are available to a project manager? A project manager may contract out any one or all of the project management, design, and construction functions to acquire the capability and capacity needed for the project. Contracting out a function also results in transferring, from the Agency to the contractor, responsibility for and control of the means and methods of how the work is executed, as well as the risks associated with the performance of the work. Figure 3-3 describes alternative project delivery strategies along with the corresponding transfers of control and risk from the Agency to the contractor. Figure 3-4 illustrates the sharing of control and risk between the Agency and the contractor for different delivery strategies.

For the example bus maintenance facility project, the project manager plans a design/bid/build (D/B/B) delivery strategy where: the project manager and other Agency staff will manage the project; design and design management will be contracted out to a General Engineering Consultant (GEC); and a Construction Manager (CM) will be retained to manage construction carried out by various construction contractors and suppliers.

For smaller Agencies, it is often expedient for the project manager to choose delivery strategies similar to the example above, that contract out the project work rather than hire an entire project staff. It is difficult to recruit qualified project staff for a single project. Using contracted services allows the project manager to better match resources to project needs. A contractor can be retained when the need arises and the project manager can immediately terminate their involvement and expense when the project need is over. Whatever delivery strategy the project manager selects, it is important that the Agency, through the project manager, retains the ultimate authority and accountability for the effective management of the project. This is the case even where the Agency’s project manager chooses to retain a Program Management Consultant (PMC) to manage the project on behalf of the Agency.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Sub Strategy</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Sponsor Control/Risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Own Forces</td>
<td>Total Project</td>
<td>Agency manages, designs, and constructs project with own forces</td>
<td>Agency has total control and accepts all risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Agency manages and constructs project with own forces, and retains design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultant For Design Work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Agency has total control and accepts all risks except for design errors or omissions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B/B</td>
<td>Agency Managed D/B/B</td>
<td>Agency manages project, contracts out design to engineering consultants and construction to contractors</td>
<td>Maintains overall project control and transfers detailed engineering design/construction tasks and risks to contractors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GEC</td>
<td>Agency retains a GEC to manage the design and design consultants</td>
<td>Agency transfers control of design and design management tasks and risks to GEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Agency retains CM to manage construction contractors</td>
<td>Agency transfers control of construction and construction management tasks and risks to CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PMC</td>
<td>Agency retains a PMC to manage the project including consultants and contractors</td>
<td>Agency maintains control of project scope and transfers project management tasks and risks to PMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMAR</td>
<td>Construction Manager at Risk (CMAR) - or Construction Manager/General Contractor (CM/GC)</td>
<td>Agency may also retain a GEC and PMC</td>
<td>Agency transfers a share of control of scope through design to the CMAR contractor and all of the control and risk of the management and execution of construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B</td>
<td>Agency may also retain a GEC and PMC</td>
<td>GEC partially completes design through (typically 30 percent or more). Agency retains a D/B contractor to complete design and construct the project</td>
<td>Agency maintains control of scope through major design decisions (30 percent or more) after which control and risk of design and construction is transferred to D/B contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B/O/M</td>
<td>Design/Build/Operate or Design/Build/Operate/Maintain (D/B/O/M)</td>
<td>As for D/B, plus contractor is responsible for the operations and maintenance of the facility for a specified period</td>
<td>Agency transfers control and risk of operations and maintenance to the contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turnkey</td>
<td>Could be used for D/B or D/B/O/M</td>
<td>Agency prepares a performance specification that is bid on by turnkey contractor, who may also participate in financing the project</td>
<td>Agency controls scope of performance specification after which control and risk of conceptual/detail design and construction transfers to turnkey contractor, including operations and maintenance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 3-3  Project Delivery Strategies**
The project technical capacity and capability is subject to review by FTA and the Project management Oversight Contractor (PMOC in accordance with in accordance with 49 CFR Part 633. The objective of the PMOC’s technical capacity and capability review includes the following:

- Organization and personnel qualifications and experience

- The Agency’s approach to the work, ability to perform the work including its methods, policies, and procedures for developing and updating reasonable and realistic project cost estimates and schedules and the Agency’s abilities to identify, analyze, manage and mitigate project risks

Project Organization and Management Structure

With the delivery strategy selected, the project manager’s attention turns to establishing the project organization structure needed to manage the project and carry out the project work done by the Agency’s own forces. Only the largest projects justify the assignment of full-time project staff in every function. Small to mid-size projects call for some form of matrix organization. In a matrix organization, staff reports to the project manager through the project chain of command to receive direction on project work assignments (what work has to be done) and to their functional supervisor for direction on their technical performance (how the work is done).

The project manager for the example bus maintenance facility project requires Agency procurement staff to acquire GEC and CM consultants and construction contractors. The level of procurement effort to do this for the project is not full-time and the staff is assigned part-time to the project on a matrix-organization basis. The procurement staff takes project direction from the project manager on what procurements are needed and when, while the staff receives functional direction on how to undertake the procurements from the functional manager of the Agency’s procurement department. When not assigned to the example project, the staff undertakes procurement activities for operations and/or other Agency projects.
Experience has shown that a project team works better within an integrated project office concept. This means that irrespective of the project staff’s parent organization, the Agency’s organization or those of the GEC and CM, the staff’s project reporting relationship with respect to project work assignments follows the project organization chain of command reporting to the project manager. When possible and in cases where staff is highly utilized, co-location of project staff within a single project office facility helps foster the integrated project office concept. Functional supervision remains the individual’s usual functional supervisor within their parent organization.

**Project Management Plan**

The project manager has to provide the project team with a road map on how to get the project done. The PMP sets out how the project is to be managed, executed, monitored, controlled, and closed through the phases of its life cycle. Figure 3-5 shows a typical PMP table of contents. The Agency may adjust plan elements according to project size, complexity, and phase.

In the PMP, the project manager sets out the management approach for the project based on the decisions made with respect to the project delivery strategy, organization and management structure, and assignment of responsibilities between the Agency and contractors, and delegation of management and financial authority through the project team.

The project’s scope, budget, and schedule are refined to establish baselines for the project’s SOW, costs, and schedule that are documented in the PMP. (See Section 9 to learn about project control techniques used for establishing baselines.) Scope, budget, and schedule baselines are yardsticks against which future project performance can be measured and assessed, and changes controlled. Depending on the project, phase baselines are established for a project phase or the entire project baseline is established after completion of sufficient engineering for the subject phase. A baseline remains unchanged through the project or project phase unless a revision to the project’s goals and objectives is authorized by the Agency’s executive management responsible for the project authorization.

The PMP typically references several sub-plans, listed later in this section, that address the necessary elements such as quality management, risk and contingency management, and document control. The PMP and sub-plans are “living” documents and are updated as the project progresses, usually as the project enters a new phase, such as moving from design into construction. Updating and revising the PMP requires the project manager to add management detail on how a new phase is to be managed, note any changes to the project scope, and forecast project costs and schedule against the baselines.
### 1. Basis for the Project

**Objectives of the Project**

Name of project sponsor and all partners involved in project development work.

Description of project organization with key personnel and support contractors including safety and security, for Project Development.

An anticipated timeline for completing the project development work within the two-year timeframe specified in MAP-21.

Evidence of LPD adoption into MPO Long Range Plan

Evidence of project in TIP, STIP

Legal Authority to implement the Project and other Legal Approvals

PMP Workshop Documentation (if applicable)

2. Environmental Assessment / Mitigation Plan

Description of NEPA analysis requirements / Project Impact Analysis

Description of Mitigation Principles

Plan for Management and Implementation of Mitigation Actions

3. Design Control Plan

Description of relationship between forecasted ridership, operating plan and proposed project travel capacity in guideways, stations, support facilities

Design Criteria for Each Discipline

Schedules for the development of contract documents (level of development expected at each milestone for design, construction drawings, specifications, general and supplementary conditions of contracts for construction, etc., and the Division 1)

Design Reviews for Drawings and Specifications

Value Engineering Review / Life Cycle Review

Coordination Review – Internal to agency and design team, External to third parties, intergovernmental, etc., and Joint Dev.

Constructibility Review

Operability and Maintainability Review

Other peer and industry reviews

Design Change and Configuration Control of documents during Design and Construction

Change Identification

Documentation Procedures

Plan and approval

Plan (list and schedule) for third party agreements: permits including utilities, real estate, railroads, transit-oriented development/joint development, etc.

Investigation and Testing Plan

Plan schedule for site surveys, geotechnical and materials investigation before/during design

Plan schedule for geotechnical and materials testing during construction

4. Project Controls

**Document and Records Controls**

Description of document organization approach including review, distribution, storage

Identification of physical document location

Identification of electronic document control system; description of interoperability among management systems

Evidence of Document Control Procedures being implemented

Cost Control Procedures

Description of estimating methods/assumptions

Final cost estimating methodology report

Procedures for maintaining baseline project cost through

Initial/initializing schedule designs

Project Controls (cont'd)

Contingency Management

Contracting techniques

Cost allocation

Placing policies for working with construction contractors to maintain SCC Cost Breakdown of Cost management through construction; at contract closeout

Schedule Control Procedures

Description of scheduling methods and assumptions

Procedures for updating baseline project schedule

Procedures for keeping the project on schedule

Risk Control Procedures

Description of risk identification procedures pertaining to project team organization, schedule, scope, cost, quality, etc.

Risk identification in project team, drawings, general and supplementary conditions, Div. 1, Div. 2 – 48 Technical Specifications

Risk evaluation / assessment plan and procedures

Risk control and management plan and procedures

Contingency control and management plan and procedures including establishment of minimum contingency levels at each milestone (contingency breakdown)

Risk of insurance

Dispute / Conflict Resolution Plan (claims avoidance and claims resolution)

Plan for Design Phase

Plan for Procurement

Plan for Construction Phase

Plan for Start Up and Revenue Operations

---

**Figure 3-5** Project Management Plan Outline
**SECTION 3: PROJECT INITIATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure 3-5</th>
<th>Project Management Plan Outline (continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5. Project Delivery and Procurement Plan</td>
<td>Procedures for Procurement (advertising, bidding, awarding of contracts for consultants and construction contractors, procurement for equipment, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(continued)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Community Outreach Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Information System Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Real Estate Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Management Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Legal Services and other services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction Management Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction Testing and Inspection Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prelim. Selection of Project Delivery Method (DDB, DB, CMGC etc.) (include rationale for and identification of risks inherent in selected method)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Final Selection of Project Delivery Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Major Contract Packages – Description of Packages and Construction Sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Procurement of Long Lead Items and Pre-ITCA Items or work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Work by Third Parties such as Utilities, Railroads, Private Sector, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contracting Strategy for Transit-Centered Development and Joint Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) Opportunities, Federal DBE, State/Local WBE &amp; MBE Plans and Goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Labor Relations and Policies</td>
<td>Wage Rates and Classifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wage and Hour Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>State and Local Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No Strike Agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Construction of Fixed Infrastructure – Procedures</td>
<td>Construction Contract Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Construction Inspection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coordination with Third Parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Site Logistics Plan (materials transport and storage, temporary site facilities, maintenance of existing pedestrian ways, transit and traffic operations during construction, protection of existing utilities)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Processing Shop Drawing, Bulletin, RFI’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negotiating and Approving Change Orders and Claims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substantial Completion, Final Completion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Start up and Revenue Operations</td>
<td>Testing Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Closeout Materials (warranty, testing results, O&amp;M manuals, spare parts, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plan for Training of Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Quality Assurance / Quality Control Program Plan</td>
<td>QA/QC Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan</td>
<td>Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Fleet Management Plan</td>
<td>Fleet Management Plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Traditionally the project is managed by personnel in the planning organization through completion of the project development phase. As the project moves into the engineering phase where engineering and construction management skills are required, it is critical that the top management recognize and plan for the changes in project management leadership necessary to make a successful transition from the planning/environmental project development to the engineering phase. In Section 9, we explain some useful tools and techniques that support the project manager in the control of scope, cost, and schedule.

A project’s authorization may be limited to proceeding up to a certain milestone at which certain criteria must be met for the project to receive further authorization to continue. This staged authorization is known as staged-gate decision-making. In our example project scenario the agreement with the FTA authorized funding up to the conclusion of sufficient engineering. At this point, continued FTA funding was conditional on the Agency preparing an acceptable PMP, demonstrating the capability and capacity to put in place the resources to manage and undertake design and construction, and securing financing for the Agency’s share of project costs.

The project’s PMP is subject to review by FTA and the PMOC in accordance with 49 CFR Part 633. The objective of the PMP review includes the following:

- The Agency’s PMP as an overarching project implementation plan
- The adequacy and soundness of the elements and sub plans contained within the PMP at required points during the Project and to ensure such elements are complete to the level necessary for effective and efficient execution of the Project given the project phase

Supporting Management Plans

Supporting management plans are added to a project as appropriate depending on the project's size and complexity. Larger and more complex projects may require adding one or more of the following supporting plans to the PMP at project initiation:

- Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP)
- Construction Management Plan (CMP)
- Construction Quality Plan (CQP)
- Operations and Maintenance Plan (OMP)
- Project Implementation Plan
- Quality Assurance Plan (QAP)
- Quality Management Plan (QMP)
- Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan (RAMP)
- Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP)
- Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP)
- Value Engineering Analysis Report
- Documentation of Agency processes such as for document control, change orders, internal reporting, and material and operational testing
Quality Management Plan

The QMP describes how the project will comply with the Agency’s quality policy in terms of the project procedures for quality assurance (QA), quality control (QC), and continuous process improvement. QA is the planned processes the project will follow to make certain that the quality policy is met through: QA audits to examine whether project activities are in compliance with project procedures, and process analysis to examine the effectiveness of project activities, learn from experience and problems encountered and thereby improve the process. QC is the monitoring of specific project results to determine whether they meet with predetermined quality standards and metrics. Continuous process improvement is the iterative application of process analysis over the length of the project and from project to project. Each consultant and construction contractor performing work on the project must have a QA plan that is acceptable to the Agency, so that the Agency can assess that the contractor’s quality standards meet the Agency’s quality management plan.

The project’s quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) program is subject to review by FTA and the PMOC in accordance with 49 CFR Part 633. The objective of the QA/QC review is to assess and evaluate the adequacy and soundness of the Agency’s QA/QC program and ability to implement such a program over the course of the project.

Risk and Contingency Management Plan

The RCMP describes how the project is organized and the procedures used to manage the project risks, addressing in the plan:

- Roles and responsibilities of project staff in risk management.
- Identification of project risks.
- Categorization of risks in terms of probability of occurrence and impact on project cost, schedule, scope, and/or quality.
- Risk handling should the risk event occur, through one or more of the following measures:
  - Assumption – Accepting the consequences of the risk.
  - Avoidance – Changing the project deliverable design or work methods that lead to the risk.
  - Control – Developing measures to reduce the risk’s probability of occurrence, continually re-evaluating the risk, and having in place contingency plans to adopt that mitigate the impacts of the risk.
  - Transfer – Sharing or transferring the consequences of the risk with others, for example, through insurance or warranty provisions.
Contract Management Planning

The project manager’s choice of project delivery strategy determines what products/services are to be delivered by the project team and those that will be contracted out. We now turn our attention to developing the project’s contract management plan for the contracted out work. Depending on the size of the project, the contract management plan may be a section within the PMP, or for larger projects, a supporting planning document referenced in the PMP.

Contract Procurement Planning

Procurements for most projects are undertaken by the Agency’s procurement department that has in place-associated procurement procedures. The project manager’s role is to make certain that the department’s procurement activities on behalf of the project fit in with the project plan. The contract management plan sets out how this is to be achieved, by addressing:

- Types of contracts to be used. Choice of contract type depends on the nature of service/product purchased and choices on the division of risk between the Agency and contractor; see Section 9.
- Who estimates the expected contract price.
- Who develops the SOW for the contract.
- Use of standardized procurement documents and any special documents needed.
- Integration of procurement lead times into the project schedule.
- Incorporating contractual delivery dates into contracts that coordinate with the project schedule.
- Use of performance bonds and/or insurance contracts to meet the project’s risk management objectives, including liability and insurance conditions and minimum limits to be met by the contractor.
- Establishing evaluation criteria to assess the selection of contractors; see Section 9.
- Definition of the procurement procedures for: preparation of procurement documents, advertising, bidder conferences, any bidder pre-qualification, receipt of proposals/bids, bidder interviews, selection, contract price negotiation, contract award and handling of protests. (In many instances, the procedures used for project procurements will be those the Agency already has in place.)

Based on the delivery strategy the project manager selected for the example bus maintenance facility project, the contract management plan needs to include two professional service contracts, one for the GEC and one for CM, and various construction contractor and equipment supplier contracts. Identification of the number of construction and supplier contracts may not be possible until later in the design process, so as with the PMP, the contract management plan will require updating as the project progresses.
Contract Administration Planning

The contract management plan also addresses how awarded project contracts are to be administered. Due to a contract’s legal nature, it is important that the project team understands the legal implications of their actions relative to project contracts. The role of the contract administrator is to make certain the contractor meets its contractual obligations, the Agency adheres to its contractual obligations, and the Agency’s legal rights are protected.

It is important that the PMP and the contract management plan clearly identify the roles and procedures to be followed by the project staff responsible for managing the project (delivering the project scope on time and within budget) versus the project staff responsible for administering project contracts (making certain contract parties meet their contractual obligations and protecting the organization’s legal rights). The contract management plan sets out how this is to be achieved, addressing:

- Who has the authority to direct and approve the contractor to perform work
- How the contractor’s work is monitored and performance reported
- Process by which changes to the contractor’s work are requested, approved, and the contract modified
- What inspections and audits are to be conducted of the contractor’s work
- How the contractor requests payment and payment requests are reviewed and approved
- What financial audits are to be conducted on contractor payments
- How contract documents, correspondence, and other records are managed

(Section 9 provides additional information of what constitutes good project documentation for handling important contract administration activities such as contract changes and request for payment.)

Safety and Security Management Planning

Depending on the size of the project, safety and security management may be a section within the PMP, or for larger projects, a separate SSMP maybe referenced in the PMP. Guidelines for developing the SSMP are addressed in FTA Circular C5800.1, Safety and Security Management Guidance for Major Capital Projects. The following SSMP sections are required in accordance with C5800.1:

1. Management Commitment and Philosophy
2. Integration of Safety and Security into Project Development Process
3. Assignment of Safety and Security Responsibilities
4. Safety and Security Analysis
5. Development of Safety and Security Design Criteria
6. Process for Ensuring Qualified O&M Personnel
7. Safety and Security Verification Process
8. Construction Safety and Security
10. FRA Coordination
11. DHS Coordination

The SSMP should be developed very early in the project process and provided as part of the contract procurement documents to ensure sufficient support. Further sub-plans of the SSMP are typically developed, specifically to address requirements of SSMP sections 4 through 9 as follows:

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 4 - Safety and Security Analysis:**
  - Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA)
  - Threat and Vulnerability Assessment (TVA)
  - Operational Hazard Analysis (OHA)

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 5 - Development of Safety and Security Design Criteria:**
  - Design Criteria and References to NFPA, APTA, IEEE, etc.
  - Configuration Management Plan (for design deviations)

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 6 - Process for Ensuring Qualified Operations and Maintenance Personnel:**
  - Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Plan
  - Rulebook and Standard Operating Procedures
  - Training Plan
  - Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan (SEPP)

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 7 – Safety and Security Verification Process:**
  - Safety and Security Certification Plan (SSCP)
  - Certifiable Item List (CIL)
  - System Integrated Test (SIT) Plan
  - Rail Activation Plan (RAP)

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 8 – Construction Safety and Security:**
  - Injury and Illness Prevention Plan (IIPP)
  - Construction Safety and Security Plan

- **Sub-plans of SSMP Section 9 – Requirements for 49 CFR Part 659:**
  - System Safety Program Plan (SSPP)
  - System Security Plan (SSP)
  - Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan (SEPP)

Consistent with other project plans the SSMP must clearly identify the roles and responsibilities of the project staff, contractors, and stakeholders responsible for managing safety and security.

The project's SSMP is subject to review by FTA and the PMOC in accordance with 49 CFR Part 633. The objective of the SSMP review is to assess and evaluate the adequacy of development and implementation of the safety and security management program over the course of the capital project.
With the implementation of MAP-21, 49 U.S.C. 5329 has been revised to increase the FTA’s and SSO agency’s safety oversight and authority of transit projects, specifically during engineering and other phases prior to start-up. As of early 2016, FTA was undergoing the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (NPRM) process to support developing the national safety plan clarifying safety oversight and requirements. However, FTA and SSO agencies have instituted increased oversight activities of capital projects, specifically with on-site reviews.

In partnership with the FTA regional office, FTA’s Headquarters Office of Transit and Safety Oversight (TSO) conducts Safety and Security Readiness Reviews (SSRR prior to revenue service. The SSRR includes document reviews, on-site interviews and project tours to ensure readiness implement 49 CFR Part 659 requirements. The SSRRs are typically scheduled 3 to 12 months prior to the rail transit agency’s proposed revenue service date.

The SSO agency may conduct a pre-review safety assessment of the project prior to revenue service and during various phases of the project. The SSO agency’s Program Standard will specify the project safety and oversight requirements as well as the scope of the pre-review safety assessment.

Other Requirements

Buy America

Buy America Act regulations apply for federally funded transit projects. Requirements vary depending on the end product being procured. For projects where multiple end products are being procured, the recipient must implement measures to verify that each end product meets the applicable Buy America requirements.

For rolling stock end products, the general requirements are that final assembly of the end product must take place in the United States and greater than 60 percent of the cost of all components must be manufactured in the United States. Examples of rolling stock end products are provided in Appendix A of 49 CFR 661.3, and the relevant requirements are specified in 49 CFR 661.11.

For steel and iron end products, the general requirements are that all steel and iron manufacturing processes must take place in the United States. Examples of steel and iron end products are provided in Appendix A of 49 CFR 661.3, and the relevant requirements are specified in 49 CFR 661.5.

For manufactured end products, the general requirements are that all manufacturing processes for the product must take place in the United States and all components must be manufactured in the United States. Examples of manufactured end products are provided in Appendix A of 49 CFR 661.3, and the relevant requirements are specified in 49 CFR 661.5.
Procurements for rolling stock end products that carry passengers in revenue service are required to undergo pre-award and post-delivery audits in accordance with 49 CFR 663. Agencies may conduct additional audit(s)/review(s) during production as may be appropriate to mitigate risk of noncompliance at post-delivery audit.

While non-rolling stock procurements are not required to undergo formal pre-award and post-delivery audits, recipients must nonetheless exercise due diligence in verifying and documenting the compliance of federally funded programs with Buy America requirements.

**ADA**

As a recipient of FTA financial assistance, a Project Sponsor Agency is required to carry out provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and the U.S. Department of Transportation’s (DOT) implementing regulations at 49 CFR Parts 27, 37, 38, and 39 and the guidance given circular 4710.1 of November 4, 2105. These regulations require reasonable modifications to policies, practices, and procedures to avoid discrimination and ensure accessibility to individuals with disabilities.

FTA reviews an Agency’s conformance with ADA regulations during the grant-making process or as part of compliance review in the course of program oversight. Accordingly, FTA may request of the Agency project modifications or changes in policy, practice, or procedure. FTA typically leverages existing review processes to track the Agency’s conformance with ADA requirements and reasonable modification requests.

The DOT ADA regulations at section 37.41(b)(1) describe limited exceptions to the DOT standard, and detail how compliance still is required to the extent that it is not structurally impracticable. FTA may require documentation substantiating any claim that compliance with a particular DOT standard is impracticable.

Where compliance is impracticable, the Agency must adhere to principals of equivalent facilitation. Outlined in 49 CFR Part 38.2 which indicates that departures from particular technical scoping requirements are permitted where the alternative design and technologies used provide substantially equivalent or greater access to and usability of the vehicles or facilities. FTA considers these departures on a case by case basis.

A project may merit consideration for ADA compliance if it includes any alteration that affects the usability of the facility, or alteration to a facility’s primary function area. This includes altering the path of travel or a primary function area associated with the path of travel.
• General alterations – Examples include remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, changes or rearrangements in structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions.

• Alterations in the path of travel – Examples include renovation that requires altering a sidewalk; replacing staircases leading to and from a station platform, a significant number of stair treads or risers, or an escalator; or resurfacing concrete staircases.

• Primary function areas – Examples include areas for waiting, ticket purchase and collection, and baggage checking; station platforms; and employment areas (with some exceptions).

FTA’s ADA guidance (C4710.1) provides an optional facilities checklist for design and construction of new or altered transportation facilities. Search “Americans with Disabilities Act Guidance” at the website to access the circular, and refer to the circular’s Attachment 3-1.

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
4. Planning, Environmental Clearance, Real Estate Acquisition

Purpose of this Section

Introduction

In this section, we show the project manager how to take the project through planning and environmental compliance process. We address the steps that are necessary to purchase real estate for federally funded projects. This is a critical phase of the project; if it is not performed well, it can result in major cost and schedule impacts later in design, construction, or operations. We review the project organization for the planning phase, the planning studies, alternatives analysis, environmental impacts assessment, and real estate acquisition. Next, we cover the importance of site investigation and environmental compliance before purchase of the property and the entitlement processes after acquisition.

Planning Phase

The project development process begins with the identification of transportation needs. Federally funded projects must be on the Metropolitan Planning Organization’s (MPO) Transportation Improvement Program (TIP) and the State Transportation Improvement Plan (STIP).

The project level planning process begins after project initiation and continues throughout the process for complying with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969. The major activities in the planning phase, which require early consideration and substantive completion, are functional analysis, alternative studies, site selection, hazardous material and geotechnical studies, utility and third party coordination, environmental impact assessment, agency coordination, public involvement, and compliance with the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970 (URA), as amended, for real estate acquisitions. The planning phase activities can continue through final design and construction for assuring compliance with mitigation measures stated in the environmental compliance document and acquisition, relocation, and management of real estate.
Role of the Agency

The Agency’s main role is to assure that the assigned project lead person for the planning phase has the right qualifications, responsibility, authority, and available time to steward this phase. This project lead may or may not be the assigned project manager and could be a consultant. Managers with current operational or planning assignments are often tasked with the work of planning a large capital project while managing many other issues related to their core responsibility. This may result in “reactive” project management rather than “proactive” project management since the lack of adequate time and focus will result in problems getting ahead of management decisions and driving the project, rather than the Agency proactively circumventing and solving them. This lead person will have to work closely with other function in the organization such as service planning, operations, maintenance, and procurement. The Agency must set priorities such that adequate support is provided to the lead person. For the example bus maintenance facility project, the Agency will need to assign a qualified manager with prior maintenance facility project management experience dedicated to thinking through the project needs. This manager anticipates issues and develops plans, collaborates with all stakeholders, and brings on the necessary resources to carry the project forward to meet the budget, schedule, quality, and safety requirements. If such a resource is not available or does not have the time necessary, the lead person will have to work with procurement to bring in consultants for this phase.

Role of Consultants/Contractors

Whether the planning phase leadership is through use of an in-house project manager or through project management provided by a consulting firm, the planning studies will have to be done by outside consultants for most major projects. This is the case especially when taken on by an Agency that does not have a large, on-going capital planning function with specialists in community planning, NEPA, and real estate acquisitions. Real estate consultants must have experience and a track record with the URA. The consultant team should have expertise in compliance with NEPA, transportation planning, engineering, architecture, and community outreach. The planning consultant team should have design experts that will take the projects through completion of the preliminary engineering phase. There must be some separation between the engineering team in charge of analyzing impacts and providing mitigations, and the environmental team in charge of identifying impacts to assure no conflict of interest exists. It is recommended that the environmental team be a separate company from the engineering team. In any case, the planning team will take the project through planning, environmental compliance, and engineering during project development phase. Since the team is involved in scoping of the engineering phase, it is conflicted out of continuing to provide engineering services for the same project unless it participates in a new competitive selection process. Once the team is selected, the project manager must complete updating of the Project Management Plan (PMP) with input from the team.
**Planning Studies**

**Functional Studies**
Functional studies are not site-specific. They are intended to define the needs of the users based on strategic goals regardless of site limitations or opportunities. In the case of a maintenance facility, the project manager will need to consider maintenance and operational needs including the size of fleet, number of shifts, outsourced functions, and labor mix to determine the space and equipment requirements. In the case of a bus stop, the functional study considerations could be limited to the loading capacity, type of shelter, shelter features, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) accessibility, lighting, advertising, and signage. Sustainability design features (desired or required by local building codes) should also be considered in defining user needs as they can impact space requirements, operating costs, and overall impact of the facility on the environment. In any case, the project manager should assign this work to a professional with extensive and prior experience with similar studies. The project manager should facilitate communication with internal and external stakeholders. Full coordination with the Agency’s fleet management plans and short- and long-term transit plans is necessary. Once the users’ needs have been identified, the project manager takes the report to the stakeholders for sign-off.

**Site Selection**
To select a suitable site, the project manager will lead the interdisciplinary team to determine a general area where the facilities may be constructed. The team considers a number of alternative sites within the general area. The project manager will lead the team considering natural features and site conditions. Once all natural features and site constraints and opportunities have been identified, the team may undertake a more detailed study of the preferred site. The team will develop a shortlist of alternative sites to be studied further. The key elements of the study can include the potential impacts to natural features (such as wetlands and threatened and endangered species habitat), the potential impacts to cultural resources and socio-economic considerations (such as historic and archaeological features and the number of people and businesses that may be displaced), the estimated cost/time to acquire the real property for the project, the site geotechnical characteristics, the operational impact costs, and the estimated costs to relocate those eligible and/or to move personal property from the property. The potential displacements of residences and businesses and the properties that may be acquired should be identified in the environmental document.

**Technical Studies**
The project manager must have qualified technical professionals on the team to analyze alternatives and facilitate the technical evaluations early on and prior to completion of site selection and acquisition. Technical evaluation of the alternative sites can include geotechnical investigations, soil and water testing for contaminated material, traffic studies, zoning studies, identification of wetlands and other natural features, and many other technical assessments.
For example, the presence of hazardous material, waste, or other contaminants on the site, and potential of undesirable soil and geotechnical conditions can have severe cost and schedule implications and must be studied prior to completion of site selection and acquisition. These studies may be necessary even if the project is categorically exempt from more formal environmental review required by federal or state legislation. The project manager will depend heavily on the interdisciplinary team with relevant experience for this work.

Utilities and Third-Party Coordination

The project manager, with technical support as necessary, will play a significant role in communication and negotiation with utilities and impacted third parties. Utility relocation and third-party coordination are critical parts of the construction of a project. Early coordination with the affected utilities and third parties is critical to keeping your project on schedule and budget. Utilities and third parties often need extensive lead time to reasonably schedule their work and obtain materials necessary for relocation of their facilities. The project manager should notify the affected utility company or third party as soon as a project is identified that may require utility relocation or third party cooperation. Once the parties are made aware (or notified) of the future need, the utility company will be able to provide information concerning the location of existing utilities and proposed new utilities for a project site. Third party agreements are executed following letters of intent signed between the Agency and impacted third parties.
Recent Changes to the Transportation Planning Process

The project manager should be aware there are opportunities to accelerate project delivery. Some of the most notable opportunities involve the early acquisition of property, using planning studies or products in the NEPA process, and using programmatic mitigation plans.

The early acquisition of property for right-of-way is possible prior to completion of the NEPA process provided that certain findings are made including a finding that the acquisition will not limit the consideration of alternatives in the NEPA process (MAP-21 Section 1302). This authority can only be used for acquisitions that are negotiated "without the threat of condemnation."

The planning-NEPA linkage was authorized by FTA through their statewide and metropolitan planning regulations and has allowed a wide range of decisions and analyses to be adopted in the NEPA process, including decisions on purpose and need and the range of alternatives to be considered. Using or adopting planning products for use in the NEPA process is allowed (MAP-21 Section 1310) if it has been "approved by the State, all local and tribal governments where the project is located, and by any relevant metropolitan planning organization."

States and MPOs can develop programmatic mitigation plans as part of the statewide or metropolitan transportation planning process (MAP-21 Section 1310). Programmatic mitigation plans can be developed on a regional, ecosystem, watershed, or statewide scale and can encompass multiple environmental resources within a defined geographic area or focus on a specific resource, such as aquatic resources, parkland, or wildlife habitat. It should be understood the recommendations in a programmatic mitigation plan are not binding. A Federal agency may consider that plan in determining mitigation for a project when carrying out its responsibilities under NEPA, but it is not required.
Environmental Compliance

Federal Process

During the planning phase, when an Agency has programmed federal funds, the project manager must assure that the project considers the potential environmental impacts of the project, with acceptable mitigation measures, in accordance with the NEPA and receives clearance through an FTA action. NEPA provides an umbrella and “how to” guidelines for addressing many other federal and state requirements and laws governing environmental protection such as the Endangered Species Act regulated by the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. The regulations are described in detail in 23 CFR 771. The FTA regional office can provide a checklist that will help evaluate the significance of potential impacts to determine if the project is exempt from further review or must perform more detailed environmental studies.

The project manager in consultation with the FTA and with help from an experienced staff or consultant can fill out a Class of Action Determination checklist and oversee performance of the necessary studies to address potential impacts such as traffic, noise, air quality, and biological resources. Once the checklist is submitted to the FTA, the FTA will review it and the supporting studies and make a determination. If it is determined that the proposed project would not result in significant adverse impacts, it is categorically excluded from further review, other than permitting, is necessary. A determination that a project is categorically excluded is based on past experience with similar projects that do not result in significant environmental impacts. It includes actions which do not induce significant impacts to planned growth or land use for the area; do not require the relocation of significant numbers of people; do not have a significant impact on any natural, social, cultural, recreational, historic or other resource; do not involve significant air, noise, or water quality impacts;
do not have significant impacts on travel patterns; or do not otherwise, either individually or cumulatively, have any significant environmental impacts. If it is determined that the action is categorically excluded and would not result in significant adverse impacts, supporting documentation such as additional studies is often required to address and clarify relatively minor impacts.

Construction of new bus storage and maintenance facilities in areas used predominantly for industrial or transportation purposes, where such construction is consistent with existing zoning and located on or near a street with adequate capacity to handle anticipated bus and support vehicle traffic, is an example of an action that may be categorically excluded from further environmental review. A typical abbreviated checklist is shown in Figure 4-2.

In cases where the impacts of an action are not known, a more formal study called Environmental Assessment (EA) is performed. The purpose of an EA is to determine if certain aspects of the proposed project have the potential for significant adverse social, economic, or environmental impact and if present, create the foundation for preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS). The significance of impacts is judged on a case-by-case basis and measured in terms of their context and intensity. The EA process may also facilitate identification of alternatives and measures that might mitigate adverse environmental impacts. At the conclusion of the EA study, the Agency may receive a Finding of No Significant Impacts (FONSI). It is possible that before an EA is completed, the Agency may be asked to expand the scope of study and begin the preparation of an environmental impact statement.

| • Detailed Project Description  |
| • Location (Including Address)  |
| • Metropolitan Planning and Air Quality Conformity |
| • Zoning                           |
| • Traffic Impacts                  |
| • Carbon Dioxide (CO) Hot Spots    |
| • Historic Resources              |
| • Noise                           |
| • Vibration                       |
| • Acquisitions & Relocations Required |
| • Hazardous Materials             |
| • Community Disruption and Environmental Justice |
| • Use of Public Parkland and Recreation Areas |
| • Impacts on Wetlands             |
| • Floodplain Impacts              |
| • Impacts on Water Quality, Navigable Waterways, & Coastal Zones |
| • Impacts on Ecologically Sensitive Areas and Endangered Species |
| • Impacts on Safety and Security  |
| • Impacts Caused by Construction  |

If the impacts are significant, an EIS must be prepared. The EA and EIS include detailed environmental studies, related engineering studies, results of agency coordination, and public involvement. However, Engineering Phase activities, property acquisition, purchase of construction materials or rolling stock, or construction, cannot proceed until FTA approval is received.
There are a few exceptions for property acquisitions such as corridor preservation, hardship, and protective buying. Following the circulation and approval of a Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS) and Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS), the FTA may issue a Record of Decision (ROD) documenting the work performed, decisions made, and mitigation commitments to be honored during the final design and construction.

If new information is found or conditions change, a reevaluation may be required. In some cases if the conditions change the project significantly, a supplemental EIS may be required. The flow chart in Figure 4-3 shows the NEPA process.
Environmental Justice

The FTA provides guidance to incorporate environmental justice (EJ) principles into plans, projects, and activities that receive funding from FTA in Circular C4703.1. The guiding environmental justice principles followed by FTA are:

- To avoid, minimize, or mitigate disproportionately high and adverse human health and environmental effects, including social and economic effects, on minority populations and low-income populations.
- To ensure the full and fair participation by all potentially affected communities in the transportation decision-making process.
- To prevent the denial of, reduction in, or significant delay in the receipt of benefits by minority and low-income populations.

FTA provides assistance to integrate the principles of environmental justice into the decision-making process. Its Environmental Justice Policy Guidance provides recommendations on (1) how to fully engage EJ populations into the decision-making process (2) how to determine whether EJ populations would be subjected to disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects of a project, policy, or activity, and (3) how to avoid, minimize, and mitigate these effects.

A key component of EJ is engaging EJ populations as part of the planning process. The public involvement plan should incorporate outreach techniques designed to encourage meaningful participation from EJ populations. If the long-range plan, Transportation Improvement Program, or Statewide Transportation Improvement Plan is estimated to have disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on EJ populations, early engagement may help to avoid, minimize, or mitigate the impacts.

Expanded Use for Categorical Exclusions

The categorical exclusions (CEs) at 23 CFR 771.118 are tailored specifically to transit projects and provide for a straightforward and efficient environmental review process. Per the Council on Environmental Quality’s (CEQ’s) "Establishing, Applying, and Revising Categorical Exclusions under the National Environmental Policy Act” guidance (December 2010), the CEs are presented as general categories that include limitations and provide a list of actions that are typically categorically excluded.

The list of CEs focuses on actions most applicable to FTA. It is the project manager’s responsibility to determine whether the action described by the grant applicant falls within the CE category (i.e., the action meets all conditions listed in the CE), whether the action is impermissibly segmented from a larger project, and whether there are unusual circumstances that would make a CE determination inappropriate. Such circumstances might include, for example, substantial controversy on environmental grounds, significant impact to properties protected by Section 4(f) of the Department of Transportation Act or Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. FTA’s Guidance for Implementation of FTA’s Categorical Exclusions provides further detail.

Grant applicants should include sufficient information for FTA to make a CE determination. A description of the project in the grant application, as well as maps or figures will normally be sufficient for FTA to determine whether the CE applies. Other applicable environmental requirements must be met regardless of the applicability of the CE under NEPA, but compliance with other environmental requirements does not elevate an action that otherwise is categorically excluded.
A CE must capture the entire action, which includes all connected actions. The requirement that a project demonstrates independent utility, connects logical termini, and does not restrict consideration of alternatives reflects FTA’s test for determining the full scope of a project for NEPA review purposes and avoiding impermissible segmentation. This does not prohibit the construction of a transportation facility in phases.

Section 4(f) of the U.S. Department of Transportation Act of 1966 – Overview

Section 4(f) of the US Department of Transportation Act of 1966 requires that the proposed use of land from any publicly owned public park, recreation area, wildlife and/or waterfowl refuge, or any significant historic site may not be approved as part of a federally funded or approved proposed action unless:

- FTA determines that there is no feasible and prudent avoidance alternative to the use of land from the property, and the action includes all possible planning to minimize harm to the property resulting from such use; or
- FTA determines that the use of the Section 4(f) properties, including any measures to minimize harm (such as avoidance, minimization, mitigation, or enhancements measures) committed to by the applicant, would have a de minimis impact on the property.

A "use" of property afforded consideration and protection under Section 4(f) occurs:

- When land is permanently incorporated into a transportation facility;
- When there is a temporary occupancy of land that is adverse in terms of the statute's preservation purpose: that is, when one of the following criteria for temporary occupancy are not met:
  - The duration of the occupancy must be less than the time needed for the construction of the proposed action, and no change of ownership occurs.
  - Both the nature and magnitude of the changes to the Section 4(f) property are minimal.
  - No permanent adverse physical changes, or interference with activities or purposes of the resources on a temporary or permanent basis, are anticipated.
  - The land must be returned to a condition that is at least as good as existed prior to the proposed action. A documented agreement of the Federal, State, or local officials having jurisdiction over the land regarding the above conditions is effectuated.

- When there is a constructive use of a Section 4(f) property. A constructive use occurs when the proposed action does not incorporate land from a Section 4(f) property, but the proposed action's proximity impacts are so severe that the protected activities. Features or attributes that qualify the property for protection under Section 4(f) are substantially impaired. Examples of a constructive use are:
  - The noise level increase from the proposed action substantially interferes with the use and enjoyment of a Section 4(f) resource (e.g., hearing performances at an outdoor amphitheater or interrupting a quiet setting).
The proximity of the proposed action substantially impairs the aesthetic quality of a resource where these aesthetic qualities are considered important contributing elements to the value of a resource (e.g., obstructing or eliminating the primary views of an architecturally significant building).

- A restriction on access diminishes the utility of a resource.
- A vibration impact from the operation of a proposed action impairs the use of a resource or affects the structural integrity of a historic building or impairs its utility.
- The proposed action results in an intrusion into an ecological setting that diminishes the value of a wildlife or waterfowl refuge adjacent to the proposed action.

A feasible and prudent avoidance alternative avoids using Section 4(f) property and does not cause other severe problems of a magnitude that substantially outweighs the importance of protecting the Section 4(f) property. In assessing the importance of protecting the Section 4(f) property, it is appropriate to consider the relative value of the resource to the preservation purpose of the statute. The preservation purpose of Section 4(f) states: "It is the policy of the United States Government that special effort should be made to preserve the natural beauty of the countryside and public park and recreation lands, wildlife and waterfowl refuges, and historic sites" (USDOT, 2011).

An alternative is not feasible if it cannot be built as a matter of sound engineering judgment.

An alternative is not prudent if:

- It compromises the proposed action to a degree that it is unreasonable to proceed with the proposed action in light of its stated purpose and need;
- It results in unacceptable safety or operational problems;
- It causes severe social, economic, or environmental impacts even after reasonable mitigation; severe disruption to established communities; severe disproportionate impacts to minority or low income populations; or severe impacts to environmental resources protected under other Federal statutes;
- It results in additional construction, maintenance, or operational costs of an extraordinary magnitude;
- It causes other unique problems or unusual factors; or
- It involves multiple factors above that while individually minor, cumulatively cause unique problems or impacts of extraordinary magnitude.

All possible planning means that all reasonable measures identified in the Section 4(f) evaluation to minimize harm or mitigate for adverse impacts and effects must be included in the proposed action. For public parks, recreation areas, and wildlife and waterfowl refuges, the measures may include (but are not limited to) design modifications or design goals: replacement of land or facilities of comparable value and function: or monetary compensation to enhance the remaining property or to mitigate the adverse impacts of the proposed action in other ways.

For historic sites, the measures normally serve to preserve the historic activities, features, or attributes of the site as agreed by the FTA and the official(s) with jurisdiction over the Section 4(f) resource in accordance with the consultation process under 36 CFR Part 800.
In evaluating the reasonableness of measures to minimize harm, the FTA would consider the preservation purpose of the statute and:

- The views of the official(s) with jurisdiction over the Section 4(f) property;
- Whether the cost of the measures is a reasonable public expenditure in light of the adverse impacts of the proposed action on the Section 4(f) property and the benefits of the measure to the property; and
- Any impacts or benefits of the measures to communities or environmental resources outside of the Section 4(f) property.

*De minimis* impacts to Section 4(f) resources are those impacts that would have no adverse impact on the protected resource. For parks, *de minimis* impacts are defined as those that do not adversely affect the activities, features, and attributes of the resource. The official with jurisdiction over the park or property must concur that the proposed action would not adversely affect the resource. For historic properties, a *de minimis* impact finding may be made if a "no historic properties affected" or "no adverse effect" determination is made through the Section 106 process and concurred upon by the SHPO.

After consideration of impact avoidance, minimization, and mitigation or enhancement measures, the FTA may determine that use of a Section 4(f) property results in a *de minimis* impact. In such cases, an analysis of avoidance alternatives is not required and the Section 41f process is complete. A *de minimis* finding cannot be made if there is a "constructive" use of a Section 4(f) property.

**Section 4(f) – Compliance Process**

The compliance process typically has three steps for projects that may have an effect on Section 4(f) lands:

- **Determining Significance.** For a property to be deemed significant, it must play an important role in meeting the objectives of a community in terms of the availability and functions of recreation, park, or wildlife and waterfowl refuge areas. Significance is determined through consultation with the federal, state, or local officials having jurisdiction over the property. Once a property's significance has been determined, Section 4(f) prohibits both the actual taking of land from the protected property and constructive use of the property - where a project's proximity to the Section 4(f) resource substantially impairs the normal use of the land.

- **Developing Alternatives.** Parklands are to be protected unless unusual factors or unique problems are present, or the cost, environmental impacts, or community disruption resulting from proposed alternatives are particularly large. In evaluating an alternative, one must consider whether the alternative uses Section 4(f) property, whether it is prudent and feasible, and to what extent it harms the resource. If several alternatives include the use of land from a Section 4(f) resource, the alternative which is prudent and feasible and that has the least overall impact on the resource, including mitigation measures, must be selected.

- **Section 4(f) Evaluation.** Whenever Section 4(f) property is used for a project, documentation must be prepared that demonstrates that there are unique problems or unusual factors involved in the use of non-Section 4(f) alternatives, or that the costs and social, economic, and environmental impacts, or community disruption resulting from the alternatives are particularly large.
The evaluation must contain the following information:

- A description of the proposed action
- A description of the resource
- The impacts of each alternative on the resource
- Alternatives to avoid using the resource
- Measures to minimize harm
- Coordination with the agency having jurisdiction over the Section 4(f) property

The National Historic Preservation Act of 1966

Congress enacted the National Historic Preservation Act in 1966, mandating that Federal decision makers consider historic properties during project planning. Section 106 of the NHPA requires Federal agencies to take into account the effects of undertakings they carry out, assist, fund, or permit on historic properties and to provide the ACHP a reasonable opportunity to comment on such undertakings (CEO, ACHP 2013).

Federal agencies meet this requirement by completing the Section 106 process set forth in the implementing regulations, "Protection of Historic Properties," 36 CFR Part 800. The goal of the Section 106 process is to identify and to consider historic properties that might be affected by an undertaking and to attempt to resolve any adverse effects through consultation. The process provides for participation by SHPO, THPO, tribal, state, and local governments, Indian tribes and Native Hawaiian organizations, applicants for Federal assistance, permits, or licenses, representatives from interested organizations, private citizens, and the public. Federal agencies and consulting parties strive to reach agreement on measures to avoid, minimize, and mitigate adverse effects on historic properties and to find a balance between project goals and preservation objectives (CEO, ACHP 2013).

The CEQ has developed a handbook for integrating processes for complying with NEPA and Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. The concepts for integrating NEPA and Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act consist of:

- Begin integration of NEPA and Section 106 processes early-the earlier it begins, the better it works.
- Educate stakeholders on the benefits of integrating, through coordination or substitution, the NEPA and Section 106 processes.
- Develop comprehensive planning schedules and tracking mechanisms for the NEPA and Section 106 processes to keep them synchronized.
- Develop comprehensive communication plans that meet agency outreach and consultation requirements to maximize opportunities for public and consulting party involvement and minimize duplication of effort by agency staff. Plans should specify whether the agency will use coordination or substitution.
- Use NEPA documents to facilitate Section 106 consultation, and use Section 106 to inform the development and selection of alternatives in NEPA documents.
- Develop an integrated strategy to accomplish specialized studies to provide information and analysis needed under NEPA and Section 106.
- Complete Section 106 and the appropriate NEPA review (Categorical Exclusion, EA, or EIS) before issuing a final agency decision.
Recent Changes to the Environmental Review Process

The Project Manager should be aware there are changes to the environmental review process designed to promote increased flexibility, potentially shorten the review process, and promote innovation.

A single agency—such as FTA—can act as the lead agency on a project when a project requires approval of two or more modal agencies. Programmatic approaches should be used to conduct environmental reviews. The lead agencies is required to obtain "concurrence" of all participating agencies in the project schedule, if the schedule is included in a coordination plan (MAP-21 Section 1305).

The time period for filing lawsuits is 150 days (MAP-21 Section 1308).

Technical assistance is available to assist in completing an EIS within four years following initiation of the NEPA process (MAP-21 Section 1309).

To help shorten the time needed to complete an FEIS and ROD, an FEIS can be used that consists of "errata pages", rather than a complete, stand-alone document if the agency received only "minor comments" on the DEIS (MAP-21 Section 1319). FTA should issue the FEIS and ROD as a single document unless:

- The FEIS makes substantial changes to the proposed action that are relevant to environmental or safety concerns or
- There are significant new circumstances or information relevant to environmental concerns and that bear on the proposed action or the impacts of the proposed action (MAP-21 Section 1319).

The Project Manager should look for opportunities to coordinate similar activities early in the project development process. Early coordination includes:

- Technical assistance on identifying potential impacts and mitigation issues in an integrated fashion.
- The potential appropriateness of using planning products and decisions in later environmental reviews.
- The identification and elimination from detailed study in the environmental review process of the issues that are not significant or that have been covered by prior environmental reviews.
- The identification of other environmental review and consultation requirements so that the lead and cooperating agencies may prepare other required analyses and studies concurrently with planning activities.
- The identification by agencies with jurisdiction over any permits related to the project of any and all relevant information that will reasonably be required for the project.
- The reduction of duplication between requirements under NEPA and State and local planning and environmental review requirements, unless the agencies are specifically barred from doing so by applicable law.
- Timelines for the completion of agency actions during the planning and environmental review processes (MAP-21 Section 1320).
State Process

The environmental compliance process for individual states varies significantly from one state to another; several states have state-specific processes similar to the NEPA. Normally the lead Agency will process the planning applications for approval of land use, project design, and permitting. It is recommended that the Agency contact the State Department of Transportation (DOT) in the project state for details.

Permitting

Depending on the nature of the project, there are many permits that the project manager will need to acquire prior to construction. In this section, we cover the most commonly seen federal permits: those required for waterway encroachments and obstructions in conjunction with the environmental review process. The applicable regulation is outlined in Section 404 of the Clean Water Act which requires a permit from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) for the discharge of dredged or fill materials into Waters of the United States (Waters of the United States include wetlands). The Section 404 (b)(1) Guidelines provide guidance to the USACE and applicants for issuance of permits. Impacts to Waters of the United States need to be avoided and minimized to the extent practicable. Compliance with the Guidelines is required for the issuance of a permit. The Guidelines require the selection of the Least Environmentally Damaging Practicable Alternative (LEDPA). Most states have similar legislation and permitting requirements for waters and wetlands.

For smaller projects, the NEPA process is completed for a project prior to applying for a permit under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. The goal under NEPA is to identify and implement the environmentally preferable alternative that considers and balances impacts on natural, cultural, economic, and social resources.

The project manager must be careful not to be misled by thinking that compliance with NEPA early in the transit project development process automatically translates to compliance with the Clean Water Act. To avoid potential need for reevaluation of alternatives, the project manager must assure that the USACE public interest review is integrated in the NEPA compliance process through early consultation with USACE. Merging NEPA and Section 404 eliminates the potential conflicts with sequential NEPA and Section 404 processes. USACE encourages applicants to request pre-application conferences when projects are being planned that may require the discharge of dredged or fill materials into Waters of the United States.
Real Estate Acquisition and Relocation

Real Estate Acquisition

Acquisition of real estate for projects with federal funding must be carried out in accordance with provisions of the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act (URA) of 1970 (42 U.S.C. 4601) and regulations (49 CFR Part 24 and FTA CS010.1D). See Figure 4-4 at the end of this section.

The transportation planning process in functional studies and due diligence, including environmental and geotechnical studies, were covered earlier. The following checklist provides for an itemization of the necessary steps to be taken before purchasing a property with federal funding:

- Complete alternatives and environmental analysis and identify the parcels needed.
- Assign a real estate specialist with URA knowledge and demonstrated experience, including changes associated with MAP-21, summarized in a 2015 frequently asked questions posting on the FTA website.
- Prepare a Real Estate Acquisition and Reallocation Plan (RAMP). See Section 3 for more details on preparation of RAMP.
- Research tax and plat records to identify possible owner of property.
- Select title company to work with and order title commitments to verify legal ownership of property and describe any title curative issues.
- Contact the property owner and obtain a right of entry to get permission from property owner to enter property to perform due diligence.
- Have the property required for the project surveyed.
- Begin environmental site analysis.
- Send property owner general information letter explaining project and possible need of property.

In addition, the completion of the environmental process, receipt of a determination by the FTA, and development of the right-of-way (ROW) plans, are required before the project is ready to enter the acquisition phase. The appraisal of real property needed for the project is the next step in the acquisition process. The Environmental Site Assessment report(s) should be given to the appraiser to consider the effects contamination has on market value, if any. The appraisal report must be reviewed, corrected (or revised) if necessary, and ultimately approved by the Agency review appraiser.
The approved appraisal then becomes the basis of the Agency’s offer of just compensation to the property owner. The offer may not be less than the fair market value established by the approved appraisal. (See FTA C5010.1D for additional details on appraisal requirements.)

The next step in the acquisition process is presenting the written offer to the property owner. (An offer to the property owner cannot be made until the appraisal process is complete.) The acquiring Agency presents a written offer of just compensation to the property owner. The Agency, acting principally through an acquisition agent or negotiator, should make every reasonable effort to reach an agreement expeditiously with the property owner once it has been approved by an Agency official. If an agreement is not reached, the Agency can initiate condemnation proceedings as prescribed by law using legal counsel. If there are occupants (including the property owner) or personal property on the parcel, relocation assistance will be required. In that situation, the project manager must follow the relocation procedures associated with the URA and its implementing regulations.

Entitlement

Many cities and counties will enforce state laws and regulate land development through zoning restrictions. The project manager will take the lead in communicating with the cities and counties having jurisdiction to ascertain what steps are needed to entitle the parcel for their intended use. There are numerous types of actions and varying procedures depending on the projects and the jurisdictions. In the case of the example maintenance facility project, the project manager must assure compatible zoning and file a design review application for the intended use. In most circumstances, the project will go through design review before the conceptual engineering is done. Many jurisdictions will not allow a final design review until after the project has gone through the environmental compliance process. If the zoning is not compatible with the intended use, a general plan amendment or a use permit may be necessary.

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
SECTION 4: PLANNING, ENVIRONMENTAL CLEARANCE, REAL ESTATE ACQUISITION

Figure 4-4 Acquisition Process

Internal Approvals and, if in excess of $50,000, FTA approvals.
5.

Design

Purpose of this Section

Introduction

This section will provide you with key concepts regarding the management of the design phase. During the design phase, you will oversee the translation of the project requirements into detail drawings and specifications that will be used for the construction contract documents. As part of this section, the key points regarding the oversight of project development and engineering, managing the project schedule and performing constructability reviews, value engineering (VE), and peer reviews throughout design will be provided. Quality control (QC) and quality assurance (QA) for the design phase will also be discussed.

Design Phase

The design phase uses the project requirements to develop design criteria and move into project development and engineering to create construction documents for a contractor to bid on. As was discussed in Section 4 regarding the environmental clearance process – the design sub-phases of alternatives analysis, and project development – are interrelated with the environmental clearance process. The design phase will involve interaction with the real property acquisition and third-party coordination processes that were also discussed in Section 4.

Role of the Agency in Design

Experience has shown that for the design phase to be a success, you as the project manager must be able to commit the time necessary, as well as have an appropriate understanding of the project’s scope. As part of this effort, you will need to manage the design consultant’s scope of work (SOW) and associated progress. This effort will include monitoring their cost and schedule performance against the agreed upon SOW. This may require managing changes in the design contract as changes in design assumptions are identified. To aid in minimizing impacts to the design consultant’s efforts, timely reviews and approvals should be given to avoid delay to the project development process.

In addition, as construction capital cost estimates are developed during design, you will need to review the estimates, including the constraints of inflation and price uncertainties and balance the cost estimates within the budget. For larger projects, you may depend on a design manager. The design manager may come from either in-house staff or from a Program Management Consultant (PMC) contract, and would assist you in the timely review of key components delivered by the design consultant.
Important to Do

- Organize design team (in-house or design consultant).
- Establish Quality Management System.
- Lead design management.
- Establish design criteria, including evaluation of sustainability design concepts.
- Assess and address project risks.
- Perform conceptual design.
- Prepare Shop Equipment Manual.
- Perform project development.
- Organize and participate in value engineering.
- Perform engineering.
- Obtain appropriate permits.
- Assure third-party coordination.
- Conduct design reviews.
- Organize and participate in peer reviews.
- Perform quality control.
- Perform quality assurance.
- Perform constructability reviews.
- Complete construction bid documents.
- Support construction and commissioning activities.
- Support bid and award with preparation of addendums.

In general terms, your role as a project manager is to:

- Review and approve design concepts, project development, and engineering.
- Provide and coordinate design review comments.
- Participate in VE and risk assessment sessions.
- Manage the design consultant’s efforts.
- Monitor design costs and schedule.
- Oversee QA.
- Approve baseline capital cost and schedule.
- Approve the construction bid package.

Role of Design Consultants

The design consultant’s role is to develop the design based on the defined requirements and the eventually-approved environment document, as was discussed in Section 4, and prepare the construction bid package. The efforts will be identified in the SOW for conceptual design, project development, and engineering. The SOW must also be consistent with the Project Management Plan (PMP), which should be updated prior to commencement of the design phase.

In the PMP deliverables are defined and the roles for the project manager, the Agency, and the design staff and consultants are identified.

Typically, the design consultant’s role is to:

- Establish design criteria and assess and address project risks.
- Perform conceptual design and project development in support of the environmental clearance documents.
- Perform technical studies, develop engineering criteria, and conduct VE and risk assessment.
- Estimate capital cost and construction schedule throughout the design process.
- Prepare engineering drawings and specifications and coordinate design submissions and reviews.
- Develop and apply internal QA/QC criteria for the review of deliverables.
- Update capital cost estimates and construction schedule throughout the design process.
- Produce final design drawings and specifications for the construction bid package.
Design Phases

Project Scoping

The various design phases are intended to help develop and refine the project requirements. At the end of each phase, estimating and containing project costs is a key project management responsibility that begins at project scoping and continues throughout design. One of the primary functions of project scoping is to develop an accurate preliminary cost estimate of project costs and compare it to the programmed cost. An effective way of containing project costs is to control the project scope during the initial scoping and then throughout project design at design reviews discussed in this section. It is important that the SOW developed during project scoping is achievable within the approved budget. The following costs should be considered and refined throughout the design process:

- Agency project administration
- Surveys – topographical and boundary
- Real property and ROW acquisition
- Geotechnical investigation
- Consultant support for design and construction
- Cost estimation
- VE
- Peer reviews
- Utility services to site
- Construction
- Construction inspection/management
- Owner-furnished equipment

Project Development

At the beginning of the project development (PD) process is the establishment of a conceptual design. Using the maintenance facility example, the project manager has to understand that the most important factor is the analysis of the existing bus fleet size and the potential for an expanded fleet size. Included in this thought process is the consideration of what future fleet mix may be, including articulated buses, alternatively fueled buses, and paratransit vehicles. This thought process and analysis establishes the basis for the design.
Basic elements for the example maintenance facility project to be included during the conceptual design process include assessing the spatial area requirements for general bus maintenance, fare removal, fueling, exterior washing, interior cleaning, and bus storage. Additional space will be required for administrative and operating staff offices, training rooms, lunch rooms, locker rooms, and associated toilet facilities. Space will also be needed for parts storage, body and paint shops, tire shops, and heavy repair areas.

On-site parking will be required for vehicles for employees and vendors who will park on the site. Accommodations should be provided for such items as landscaping, site security, storm water management facilities, and potentially, water treatment facilities.

Upon completion of site selection and acquisition, the overall site layout considerations for daily operations at the bus maintenance facility in our example project need to include queuing space for buses during the mid-day and evening pull-in, bus circulation and storage space prior to maintenance and servicing, and circulation area for buses to move to and from storage on the site. Entrance and exit locations to and from the site to adjacent streets are also very important in the consideration of the overall site layout.

During the project development phase, the design team will finalize the concept for the facility and any associated equipment, and finalize the design criteria, and requirements for property/ROW and third-party coordination work that will be used for the final design sub-phase. The project development design should be established to a point where the baseline capital cost and construction schedule can be crafted. This progress is generally commensurate with the 30 percent level design.

**Design Criteria** – The design team will develop the design criteria for the project based on the SOW provided. Design analysis will establish a range of acceptable criteria or standards for the project. An example of an outline for the design criteria document that may be used for a project is provided in Figure 5-1. The project manager will review the service characteristics and site constraints provided by the design team to make sure that they satisfy the needs of the Project Requirements Definition (PRD). The project manager will need to seek input from all stakeholders and based on their comments approve the design criteria in a timely manner.

Once determined, the design criteria must not change unless otherwise approved by both the project manager and the design team. A change of design criteria during latter stages of project development or engineering may have significant implications on the design budget and schedule, as well as the construction budget and schedule.
Figure 5-1
Design Criteria
Document Outline

Important to Know
Prior to Completion of NEPA
- Code analysis
- Zoning analysis
- Topographical survey
- Boundary survey
- Existing utility survey
- Geotechnical survey
- Environmental survey
- Space programming
- Alternative layouts
- Alternative cost analyses
- Community outreach
- Traffic impacts
- Noise abatement

GENERAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS
A. SITE WORK
   - General Description of Site work
   - Bus Operations Clearance Requirements
   - Utility Service Hookups
   - Paving
   - Landscaping
   - Site Utilities
   - Best Management Practices
B. BUS MAINTENANCE AND STORAGE FACILITY
   - Design Fleet
   - Vehicle Characteristics
   - General Description
   - Facility Requirements

DISCIPLINE DESIGN CRITERIA
A. CIVIL/SITE/UTILITIES
   - Codes and Standards (Typical)
   - Design Criteria (Typical)
   - Systems, Components, & Materials (Typical)
B. SITE LIGHTING
   - Codes and Standards
   - Design Criteria
   - Luminaires
C. ARCHITECTURAL
D. STRUCTURAL
E. MECHANICAL – HVAC
F. MECHANICAL – PLUMBING
G. MECHANICAL – FIRE PROTECTION
H. MECHANICAL – FLUID DISPENSING
I. MECHANICAL – INDUSTRIAL WASTE
J. ELECTRICAL – AC POWER
K. ELECTRICAL – INTERIOR LIGHTING
L. ELECTRICAL – COMMUNICATIONS & SPECIAL SYSTEMS

Alternatives Analysis – The design team will develop different concepts for the project within the identified design criteria. The design team will develop attributes regarding each alternative that will allow the Agency to perform the analysis and prioritization of the options. This identification of the preferred alternative will be moved forward into conceptual design by the design team.

Design Prior to Completion of NEPA – The design consultant will develop graphic plans based on functional requirements and safety as identified for the preferred alternative. In addition, they will analyze the project site(s) to determine the initial "look and feel" of the project once completed. The result of the conceptual design is a set of architectural plans, elevations, landscaping plan, site boundary, and topographic surveys. Depending on the site complexity, the design may include other drawings such as grading, utility, and drainage plans.
There should be an adequate level of engineering and design to define all mitigation measures and allow preparation of a complete mitigation monitoring plan and a cost estimate with an adequate level of contingency to allow for changes due to design development.

**Design Concurrent with Completion of NEPA Before Entry into Engineering** – As part of this portion of the project, the design team will take the project from the conceptual design to a level of design that supports the environmental application and defines all significant elements that will enable a more accurate estimate of the construction project costs and impacts. The developed technical and cost information will serve as the basis for subsequent funding and implementation decisions. A major objective of design in this phase is for the project manager to oversee that the design team investigates the merits of all sound configurations and designs. These investigations require in-depth analysis of all components, their interrelationships, and their costs. In addition, environmental review requirements are completed. Once the design team completes the project can move through Engineering with a minimum of design changes, disruptions, or delays. In addition, any environmental-related permits should be obtained during this phase. This level of design is considered at least 30 percent design and engineering, including documents at the level of detail described in the Final Interim Policy Guidance - FTA Capital Investment Grant Program (CIG) of August 2015. This includes an adequate level of engineering to define project key design features, including satisfactory progress in advancing the project design and corresponding and up-to-date cost estimate and schedule. The level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix B. The supporting capital cost estimate must be based on quantities of work established in the drawings and a substantial level of cost line item detail and backup for all other costs (vehicles, equipment, real estate, professional services, unallocated allocated contingency, and financing costs).

**Engineering Phase**

Federal law requires that engineering cannot begin prior to NEPA completion as denoted by an FTA Record of Decision (ROD), Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI), or a Categorical Exclusion (CE) determination. The engineering design team will develop the construction bid package that contains the final drawings and specifications for the project required to solicit and obtain construction contract bids.

The final drawings and specifications will also detail the property or ROW needed to accommodate the project, include the appropriate permits and associated conditions from other agencies, and any coordination of work with or by third parties (e.g., utility companies) that was discussed in Section 4.
The project manager will oversee the design efforts of the engineering team through reviews of design drawings and specification submissions at several stages of design. In addition, value engineering (VE) will either be performed at the end of project development and at appropriate stages of engineering. Using the various reviews as checkpoints, you will be able to maintain an accurate assessment of the final capital cost and construction schedule for the construction phase. In addition, the design team must develop clear statements of testing requirements, operations and maintenance (O&M) manuals, and acceptance criteria for the safety and functionality of all subsystems, the implementation of which we discuss in Section 7.

The completed construction bid package will be used by the Agency to procure a contractor, and monitor the construction efforts of the contractor, as we will describe in Section 6.

The level of design Concurrent with Engineering phase But Before FFGA (New Start) or Core Capacity should be Consistent with Final Interim Policy Guidance - FTA CIG of August 2015, an adequate level engineering to define project key design features appropriate for the designated delivery method (D/B, D/B/B, and or CM/GC), including satisfactory progress in advancing the project design and corresponding and up-to-date baseline cost estimate, risk analysis, schedule, and project management plans and sub-plans. At a minimum, the level of design detail should level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix C.

For (Small Starts) the project is moved from Project Development Phase to Construction. Here too, the level of design detail should conform to the checklist in Appendix C.

### Design Management

As the Agency's project manager, you are responsible for overseeing the entire project development and engineering process as defined by both the PRD and associated PMP, as were discussed in Section 3. As part of your initial assessment of the Agency's current capacity and capabilities and the scope of the project, the determination will need to be made as to whether the design management will be performed by either you, an independent in-house individual, or by a program management consultant (PMC) that is procured for the task of design management. You will need to oversee the efforts of the PMC. The designer of record can take on project management of the design phase on less complex projects. However, the Agency’s project manager will still be very involved and will most likely have to take the lead role of interfacing the third parties who may be reluctant to deal with a design consultant without authority to commit the Agency.
Regardless of who performs the design management, it is a key role in guiding the project to a successful conclusion. Typical duties and responsibilities of the design phase project manager are to:

- Finalize project scope of work and budget.
- Make certain that the design team is performing the work and services required by the scope.
- Provide assistance and guidance to the design consultant.
- Prepare and monitor the project schedule.
- Monitor project cost including cost of design, ROW acquisition, utility relocations, construction, etc., to keep costs within budget.
- Review and coordinate reviews of all design submissions, preliminary and final real property and ROW plans, design drawings, special provisions, specifications, and estimates.
- Accept and evaluate the quality of deliverables. Verify adherence of the design consultant to the QA/QC plan.
- Coordinate and oversee design review meetings, constructability reviews, and plan checks.
- Coordinate between the Agency and involved third parties (e.g., environmental agencies, municipal officials, municipal authorities, utility companies).

**Design Reviews**

For a design/bid/build project, the project manager coordinates and oversees reviews at the design criteria, conceptual, project development, engineering, and bid documents stages. Many projects may have interim reviews within these stages. Reviews at these points in design are key control points to the design management process. A design review is a detailed, analytical, and unbiased approach used to verify that the appropriate deliverables (e.g., studies, final drawings, technical specifications, and construction bid documents) are being prepared and that the design consultant is maintaining pace with the budget and project schedule. In addition, during each review, a current construction cost estimate should be reviewed and compared against the anticipated cost.

For each design review, you make certain that the design manager will ensure the following key objectives are accomplished, as applicable to the particular review:

- Adherence to design criteria, environmental documents
- Quality of the design
- Identification of errors and omissions
- Building codes compliance
- Operational and functional objectives are met
- Coordination between design disciplines
- Adherence of cost estimates to the budget
- Designers’ feedback before progressing further
Design is biddable, constructible, and cost-effective.

Interface compatibility: adjacent project elements and the existing transit system.

Final construction contract documents comply with the design criteria, environmental document, codes, and regulations.

To help with the reviews, Figure 5-2 shows a typical Review Comment Register that the project manager and the other reviewers can use to facilitate the review during the various design reviews.

The following two submittals/reviews should be accomplished during the Project Development and Engineering of the project:

- **In-Progress Project Development Submittal** - This preliminary submittal is intended to facilitate the review of a recommended approach, including evaluation of the rejected alternatives with the design team. As such, the recommendation approach must be addressed in the plans and/or design report. It is recommended that VE be conducted at this point.

- **Project Development Submittal** - This submittal marks the division between project development and engineering and is the project manager’s and/or design manager’s last review in the project development phase. The review is meant to demonstrate that the selected approach to all major design concepts and VE recommendations and other design features have been resolved and that final design can proceed without delay. Therefore, the review should:
  - Define the impact of construction on all affected parties including utilities, railroads, governmental agencies, commercial properties, and residential areas.
  - Define the SOW for engineering of the project.
  - Provide a satisfactory basis for a realistic estimate of the cost of construction, which will serve as a budget.
  - Establish the project scope, or limits, with respect to real property and ROW.
  - Confirm compliance with the NEPA determination.
  - It is recommended that a risk assessment study be done prior to completion of engineering phase.
Several reviews usually occur during the engineering phase. The construction bid document verification and delivery review is the final review in the process. The typical scope of these reviews during engineering is:

- **First Review** – The project manager and/or design manager will make certain that all major features of design are progressing in accordance with prior direction, major engineering and VE decisions, and that most drawings, specifications, and other documents are well advanced. Usually a constructability review is conducted at this point.

- **Second Review** – The drawings and specifications provided by the design team are to be nearly completed and checked. Therefore, the project manager and the design manager will need to perform an extensive review since at this point in the design development cycle, this will be the last major design review. In addition, you and the design manager will verify that comments from the first review have been addressed. When applicable these drawings should be sent to the permitting agency for a plan check. The construction cost estimate should also be verified against the budget established for the project.

- **Third Review** – The drawings and specifications are to be finished by the design team and checked. In addition, the project manager and/or design manager will verify that comments from the second review have been addressed. Only incorporation of comments arising from this review, plus sign-off and approval should be required to complete the construction bid documents.

- **Bid Document Verification** – After delivery of all completed, signed, and sealed original drawings by the design consultant, you and the design manager are to verify that comments from the third review have been satisfactorily resolved, construction cost estimates are in line with budgets, and appropriate Agency or individual approvals can be given. Further comments that do not pertain to the third review should not be considered unless the design is in error because of an unsafe condition, non-constructability of work as shown, or new work that was not previously shown. At this point, the Agency procurement staff will add the necessary contractual provisions to the packages.

**Third-Party Coordination**

As indicated in Section 4, third-party coordination as early as possible during the project development phase is imperative. During the engineering phase, the design consultant may find it necessary to relocate or rearrange existing facilities prior to or during the construction phase. Third party work involves the relocation or rearrangement of existing facilities that impact project construction, including:

- Operational interference
- Utilities (electric power, gas, telephone, cable etc.)
- Public infrastructure (highways, roads, bridges, streets, drainage, sewer, water, etc.)
- Railroads
- Easements and ROW acquisitions
The timing and duration of third-party work requires careful planning, negotiation, and execution. This is because third parties typically need significant lead time to perform the necessary design and perform the relocation, or determine the interfaces of the third party that can be incorporated into the contract provisions. Due to the limited influence that an Agency has with respect to controlling the work of a third party, the chance for a schedule impact on the project is likely. These risks will be identified as part of the risk assessment described later. Therefore, the earlier that a third-party agreement can be negotiated, the better understanding the project manager and the design consultant will have of the overall schedule impact. A discussion on developing third-party agreements is provided in Section 9.

### Value Engineering

Agencies are encouraged to apply VE techniques to all projects. The objective of VE is to satisfy the required functions of the project at the lowest initial total cost and cost over the life of the project. Figure 5-3 provides an overview of the VE process.

#### When to Perform Value Engineering

VE for a project should be performed early in the design process before major decisions have been completely incorporated into the design, including civil, systems, and architectural areas. The project manager or the design manager will see that the VE is accomplished at or prior to the end of Project Development or before 30 percent of design.

#### How to Perform Value Engineering

As the Agency’s project manager, you will coordinate the VE session that will consist of a multi-disciplined team of professionals, who preferably are not part of the design team. VE personnel may include electrical, mechanical, civil/structural, and construction engineers, as well as specialists in architecture, cost estimation, construction management, and transit O&M. The designer of record will provide support to the VE team. The VE team leader could be a certified value specialist (CVS). For additional information on this certification, visit the Society of American Value Engineering (SAVE) website.

#### Implementation of Value Engineering Recommendations

Upon the project manager’s review of the VE recommendations, the design team will determine whether to adopt and/or reject the various proposals and then finalize the VE response report. The final report should include a summary of accepted VE proposals with revised capital and implementation costs, as well as a list of rejected proposals and the reasons for their rejection.

Based on the VE proposals that will be adopted, you should consider providing the design team with additional funds that are needed to implement the design enhancements that were identified as part of the VE.
## Pre-workshop Effort (Week Prior to Study)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan VE Study</th>
<th>Prepare for Workshop</th>
<th>Prepare Cost, LCC, &amp; Energy Models</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Obtain Project Documents</td>
<td>- Distribute Documents to Team Members: Drawings, Specifications, Cost Estimates, Design Criteria, Site Conditions, Utilities, Operation &amp; Maintenance Issues.</td>
<td>- Team Leader Reviews Cost Estimate and Prepares:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Verify VE Schedule and Agenda</td>
<td>- Team Members Become Familiar with Project</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Suggest Format for Designer Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Outline Project Responsibilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Establish Owners Performance and Acceptance Requirements</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Conduct Coordination Meeting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Identify Project Constraints</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Workshop Effort (3 - 5 Days)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Phase</th>
<th>Information Phase</th>
<th>Speculation Phase</th>
<th>Analysis Phase</th>
<th>Development Phase</th>
<th>Presentation Phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VE Team Leader Opens Workshop</td>
<td>Review Cost, LCC, and Energy Models</td>
<td>Generate a List of Ideas to Meet Required Functions</td>
<td>Evaluate Each of the Ideas Against Functional Requirements</td>
<td>Develop Proposed Alternatives</td>
<td>Summarize Findings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifies schedule, objectives, and report format.</td>
<td>Perform Function Analysis/FAST Diagram</td>
<td>VETL Introduces Creative Thinking Seek:</td>
<td>Screen Out Less Promising Ideas</td>
<td>Prepare Sketches Cost Estimates</td>
<td>Meet with Owner, User, Designer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Designer Presents Project</td>
<td>Calculate Cost/Worth of Each Function</td>
<td>- Quantity of Ideas</td>
<td>- Rank Ideas</td>
<td>Perform Life Cycle Cost Comparison</td>
<td>Provide Written Alternatives for Preliminary Review by Owner and Consultants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Discuss Owner Requirements</td>
<td>Identify Areas of High Cost/Low Value</td>
<td>- Association of Ideas</td>
<td>- List Advantages</td>
<td>- Initial Cost</td>
<td>Present Each VE Alternative For Consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Review Project Data</td>
<td>List Ideas Generated During Function Analysis</td>
<td>- Brainstorm Project</td>
<td>- Disadvantages</td>
<td>- O&amp;M Cost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Identify Objectives of Study</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Do Creative Thinking</td>
<td>- Potential for Acceptance</td>
<td>- LCC Cost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Conduct Site Visit</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Group Thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td>Consult with Owner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Post-workshop Effort (Follow-on Schedule)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Implementation Phase</th>
<th>Owner’s Review Board</th>
<th>Final VE Report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include All Back-up Information of Study</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Revise Capital and LCC Costs as Necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Methodology of the Analysis</td>
<td>- Accept</td>
<td>List Reasons for Rejection of any Alternatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Summary of Recommendations</td>
<td>- Reject</td>
<td>Submit Final VE Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Details of Estimated Costs and Life Cycle Costs</td>
<td>- Further Study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Submit Report to Owner and Designer</td>
<td>- Modify</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 5-3 Value Engineering Study Task Flow Diagram**
Peer Reviews

Peer review should be an early step in the design process that can add an external perspective to enhance the functionality of design, construction, and operation. Used in addition to a VE study, that is usually later in the design process, peer review is based on the question, "Can we do this better?" and can be used to provide an independent critique of the design phase.

Whether you or the team does or does not have previous experience with the overall design process, the team is encouraged to contact other transit operations and maintenance experts, or PMCs in order to bring in and benefit from their experience with similar design efforts.

Although Agencies are encouraged to conduct a peer review for all capital projects, FTA requires the peer review process for projects funded under the 49 U.S.C. Section 5309 discretionary program. These reviews are to make certain that bus facilities are effectively designed to enhance bus operations. A review of plans at the completion of preliminary design will be conducted using the expertise of transit operator peers who provide service under similar circumstances. The FTA requires that peer reviews be coordinated with the FTA's regional engineer.

Constructability Reviews

As soon as the design has developed sufficient detail, the design team will need to perform constructability reviews as part of the design process. Participants for constructability reviews can come from within your Agency, the design team, or assistance can be obtained from other transit agencies, code officials, independent consultants, or contractors. The first constructability reviews should be before the engineering phase of design.

Follow up constructability review should be done near completion of design or prior to construction documents are completed with focus on staging and scheduling of work with respect to specific site constraints. The purposes of constructability reviews are to:

• Eliminate construction requirements that are impossible or impractical to build.
• Maximize constructability, recognizing the availability and suitability of materials, the capability of labor resources, and the standards of practice of the construction resources.
• Verify accurate depictions of site conditions with regard to access, utilities, and general configuration.
• Make sure of the adaptation of designed structures and features to the project site conditions and constraints.
• Determine adequacy of work and storage space including contractor access to the site.
• Determine appropriate construction durations and milestones.
• Verify requirements for QA/QC during construction.
• Clearly define procedures for scheduling outages and the feasibility of utility interruptions.
SECTION 5: DESIGN

Important to Know

- Project risk is an unexpected event or circumstance that has a chance of occurring and that may prevent a project from meeting its schedule and cost estimate/budget.
- Project risks can be divided into two main categories: design/construction risks and financial risks.
- Design/construction risks include weather conditions, contractors’ inability to carry out the project, unforeseen site conditions, permitting delays, and so forth.
- Financial risks include revenue shortfalls, changes in the project cash demands, and changes in interest rates, among other things.
- Risk is defined in terms of an event (what may occur to the detriment of the project), its probability (how likely it is to occur), and the amount involved (dollars of maximum possible loss or delay).

- Determine requirements for Agency-provided materials, equipment, services, and utility connections.
- Make certain that designs can be constructed using methods, materials, and equipment common to the construction industry.
- Pay attention to the requirements of the public including adjacent land use functions, existing transit patrons, and persons with disabilities.
- Make sure coordination is included with all operating elements of the existing transit system.
- Make certain adequate provisions are provided for access, staging, and storage of waste and supplies; parking for worker and construction vehicles; and mitigation of environmental impacts during construction.

Risk Assessment

During the design phase and preferably prior to completion of project development, the project manager must facilitate performance of a risk assessment to determine whether there are events or circumstances that can occur that will have a direct impact on the project’s schedule and associated cost. As the design of the project gets more refined and nears completion of the drawings and specifications, the more costly the impact of an unexpected event will be in terms of money and schedule. Therefore, the team’s risk assessment should be updated periodically through the design phases of the project, with the final update occurring prior to construction. This risk assessment will be completed through the use of a risk register process. An example of a risk register is provided in Figure 5-4.

A risk register will help the project team capture the risks associated with the project and quantify the potential impacts to the project. To develop the risk register, you should coordinate with the other key stakeholders via a meeting or workshop to identify:

- Each project risk
- Description of the risk
- Impacted project activities
- Probability of occurrence
- Potential cost impact
- Potential schedule impact
### RISK REGISTER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Component</th>
<th>Risk ID</th>
<th>Risk/Opportunity</th>
<th>Description of Issue and Potential Management Action</th>
<th>Affected Project Activities</th>
<th>Probability of Occurrence</th>
<th>Change in Cost ($000)</th>
<th>Change in Duration/Schedule (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Right-of-Way</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Right-of-Way costs and/or schedule greater than anticipated; includes:</td>
<td>Row-of-way cost and quantity estimates are out of date and not based upon the latest design drawings; additional takes affect businesses in Line Section 3. Risks affect project cost estimate and start of construction in certain line sections.</td>
<td>All construction line sections; components, 01-10</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>$2,000.0</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• uncertainty in amount of ROW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(.5)</td>
<td>($0)</td>
<td>(0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• unit prices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• excessive condemnation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relocation, demolition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• business mitigation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Utilities</td>
<td>U1</td>
<td>City waterline project not completed as planned</td>
<td>Delay causes project delay and increased overhead costs for project</td>
<td>Components 02-05</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U2</td>
<td>City sewer project not completed as planned</td>
<td>Delay causes project delay and increased overhead costs for project</td>
<td>Components 02-05</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U3</td>
<td>City vaults not completed as planned</td>
<td>Delay causes project delay and increased overhead costs for project</td>
<td>Components 02-05</td>
<td>.9</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U4</td>
<td>Private utility relocations not completed as planned (utility company fails to move on time)</td>
<td>Delay causes project delay and increased overhead costs for project</td>
<td>All construction line sections, components 02-05</td>
<td>T=1</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T=5</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T=9</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U5</td>
<td>Delay in obtaining agreement between grantee and private utilities</td>
<td>Delays FFPA/grant award and potentially start of construction</td>
<td>Components 01-10</td>
<td>.8</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U6</td>
<td>Project's adjustment budget for private utilities is too low</td>
<td>Cost increase to grantee for payment of additional relocation costs</td>
<td>Components 01-10</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>$2,000.0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U7</td>
<td>Encounter unexpected utilities during construction</td>
<td>Change order claim by contractor results; cost and schedule impacts</td>
<td>Components 01-10</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>$3,000.0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Environmental, Permitting, and Agreements</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Delay in gaining signoff on programmatic agreements</td>
<td>Delay in issuing bid documents and subsequent construction delayed</td>
<td>Components 05, 06</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 5-4 Example of a Risk Register**
The following are a few examples of risks that may impact the development of a project:

- **Budget Risks** - Risk that budget elements will deviate from the estimate (e.g., deviations in unit prices, deviations in quantities).
- **Event Risks** - Risk of internal or external events that force the project team to work beyond the estimate just to meet the project scope and SOW (e.g., extreme weather, contractor non-performance).
- **Scope Risks** - Risk of significant changes to project scope due to external pressures (e.g., community pressures for changes in bus shelter location or increase in maintenance facility size).

Examples of risks that the Agency project manager and the design consultant should consider for the project include:

- **Real Estate**
  - Property acquisition
  - Relocation
  - Condemn
  - Eminent domain
- **Public Utilities**
  - Analysis and coordination
  - Agreements
  - Relocation
- **Financial**
- **Politics**
  - Internal/external
- **Environmental**
  - Environmental impact studies
- **Historical Significance**
  - Protected lands
  - Archaeological
  - Structures
- **Contract phasing and packaging**
  - Scope of work
  - Bid process/labor
  - Integrating construction packages
- **Community impacts and public perception**
- **Public hearing**
  - Marketing/communications
  - Safety and security
- **Material, Equipment, and Construction Techniques**

Once the risks for the project have been identified, they should be ranked according to the probability of their occurring and an associated cost implication. Then the project manager can prepare the risk management plan that will establish and prioritize mitigation measures, allocate the risks to the appropriate party (i.e., Agency, design consultant, contractor, third parties), and assign mitigation and management responsibilities.
During the design phase, the project’s risks can be monitored through peer reviews, VE studies, and constructability reviews in an effort to design the project within budget and schedule given the inevitability of unknowns.

Quality Assurance and Quality Control

Agency Oversight

As the project manager, you are responsible to assure that FTA capital funds are spent wisely. As part of the PMP discussed in Section 3, the quality requirements for the project must be addressed in the Quality Management Plan portion. The difficulty is that not every Agency will be able to justify a special QA/QC staff for a one-time project or even justify having a QA/QC staff for smaller projects such as the development of bus storage and maintenance facilities. In such cases use of consultants is appropriate.

Once the PMP is accepted, the QA/QC plan is set in place for the design portion of the project. The plan should answer the questions of who is responsible and when in time actions should occur. More important, the quality plan needs to be maintained throughout the design phase so that as a new phase is initiated, it will reflect the appropriate quality requirements. Since the primary product of the design phase is construction contract documents for construction contractors, decisions about quality requirements for construction and manufacturing need to be planned and included in the contract documents. Therefore, during the design phase of the project, you follow the design control portion of the quality management system that was put in place as part of the PMP for the entire project.

Quality Control in Design

QC during the design phase of projects is a very important part of a project-related quality program. The design team is responsible for its own QC. The design team shall provide a quality management plan prior to initiating design activities that identifies how they will achieve QC for the project. The quality management plan describes the procedures that are to be followed for design changes, including sign-off and documentation. In addition, any contract quality requirements for design reviews and sign-off from other departments within the Agency, such as construction and operations, and other relevant Agencies must be stated. A procedure for the control of project documents should also be specified.

- Calculations, drawings, and specifications are checked by qualified personnel not normally associated with their preparation.
- Verify the design against the scope.
- Constructability reviews make sure that the project includes the application of sound construction principles consistent with operating and maintenance requirements and accepted engineering practices for safe, efficient, and economic construction.

Important to Know

- Quality Control – the act of taking measurements, testing, and inspecting a process or product to make sure that it meets specification. It also includes actions by those performing the work to control the quality of the work. Products may be design drawings or specifications, manufactured equipment, or constructed items.
- Quality Control also refers to the process of witnessing or attesting to, and documenting such actions.
- Quality Assurance – making certain the project requirements are developed to meet the needs of all relevant internal and external agencies, planning the processes needed to assure quality of the project, making sure that equipment and staffing is capable of performing tasks related to project quality, making sure that contractors are capable of meeting and do carry out quality requirements, and documenting the quality efforts.
Important to Know
Benefits of Green Building

- Environmental:
  - Enhance and protect ecosystems and biodiversity
  - Improve air and water quality
  - Reduce solid waste
  - Conserve natural resources

- Economic:
  - Reduce operating costs
  - Enhance asset value and profits
  - Improve employee productivity and satisfaction
  - Optimize life-cycle economic performance

- Health and Community:
  - Improve air, thermal, and acoustic environments
  - Enhance occupant comfort and health
  - Minimize strain on local infrastructure
  - Contribute to overall quality of life

- VE design reviews assure cost effectiveness.
- Design validations make certain that the project conforms to the requirements of its intended use.

Quality Assurance in Design
The design manager is responsible for overseeing the design QA system. The design team can accomplish this by setting up an in-house QA system for the project and having the design manager perform the QA by overseeing the design consultant’s QC efforts. As the project manager you will need to maintain an oversight role to acquire confidence that the quality management system for design is achieving the project quality objectives.

Sustainability (Green Building) Standards and Design

FTA and Sustainability
FTA actively promotes environmental sustainability. Funds that support locally planned, constructed, and operated public transportation systems can have multiple environmental benefits to the communities they serve and the nation as a whole. In addition to supporting public transportation as a whole, FTA grant, research, and technical assistance programs assist state and local governments in providing environmentally sustainable transportation solutions. When planning a new or rehabilitation project, a review of the current FTA sustainability initiatives should be reviewed to see if your project might qualify for sustainability grants.

For more information, search for the phrase “Environmental Sustainability” at the FTA website.

What is Green Building Design?
Green building design can be thought of as the intelligent integration of technology with nature. The primary objectives are:

- Energy: Reduce energy consumption and operational costs.
- Materials: Maximize the use of sustainable materials.
- Air Quality: Minimize negative impacts on interior air quality.
- Productivity: Improve the health, motivation and productivity of human occupants.

Sustainability design features can range from simple conservation, such as the incorporation of low-flow water fixtures and occupancy sensing light switches; to more high-end systems like geothermal heat pumps, solar electric panels, wind turbines, and vegetated roofs.
How Does One Select and Evaluate Sustainability Options?

One tool for green design evaluation is the LEED® program; other such standards are also available. LEED stands for Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design and is a tool created by the United States Green Building Council (USGBC) to provide third-party validation of green building design. This internationally recognized certification system measures how well a building performs across a series of metrics: energy savings, water efficiency, CO₂ emissions reduction, improved indoor environmental quality, and stewardship of resources and sensitivity to their impacts.

The LEED (V4) rating system has four levels of certification, which are achieved by collecting design points. Certification levels and the associated point ranges are:

- Certified (40 to 49 points)
- Silver (50 to 59 points)
- Gold (60 to 79 points)
- Platinum (80 or more points)

Rating system points are assigned to a design in nine different categories:

- Integrative process
- Location and transportation
- Material and resources
- Water efficiency
- Energy and atmosphere
- Sustainable sites
- Indoor environmental quality
- Innovation
- Regional priority

Certification levels are achieved by scoring points within these categories for a variety of subcategories, using a scorecard that details the scores for each subcategory. The “Scorecard” is a checklist that can be used during initial design activities to help establish the possible level of LEED certification for the building project; or it or it can be just a guide to evaluate the sustainability features that could be incorporated into the design of a new or renovated facility. Details are available at the USGBC website. While the LEED rating system is primarily focused on building construction, other similar systems have been developed for transportation projects, for example, the Envision® sustainable infrastructure rating system of the Institute for Sustainable Infrastructure (ISI).
Important to Know

Sustainability Certification

There are both environmental and financial benefits to earning LEED or similar certification, including:

- Lowering operating costs and increasing asset value.
- Reducing waste sent to landfills.
- Conserving energy and water.
- Healthier and safer buildings for occupants.
- Reducing harmful greenhouse gas emissions.
- Qualifying for tax rebates, zoning allowances, and other incentives in hundreds of cities.
- Demonstrating an owner’s commitment to environmental stewardship and social responsibility.

Sustainability (Green Building) Certification

Going with LEED or similar certifications likely adds supplementary costs to the design and construction budget in the form of:

- Design costs
- Commissioning
- Energy modeling
- LEED certification documentation

Design costs attributed to LEED relate to additional architectural and engineering work required to assess the design features and how they relate to the LEED design credit system. This additional effort can include a design charrette with the building owner to determine design features and establish the level of certification desired, based on what credits are available for the project scope. It also includes additional time and effort in the design and specification of systems for the project.

Commissioning is the “compliance check” that the design and building process meets the LEED guidelines selected for the project. An outside party, independent of the design and construction teams, typically handles this.

Energy modeling is the comparison between the energy requirements for a baseline version of the building in accordance to ASHRAE 90.1-2013 minimum energy standards, and the performance of the building as designed with high efficiency components.

LEED certification documentation is the process of documenting compliance with the various LEED checklist criteria for submittal to the USGBC for review and decision on certification. A Commissioning Agent, responsible for making sure that the proper sustainable guidelines and LEED documentation and certification requirements are incorporated into the Contract Documents, executes the commissioning process. During the value engineering studies, a Commissioning Agent makes sure that the systems are looked at as whole and not just pieces. When incorporating sustainable design, each system affects each other and the removal of one system during value engineering can affect other systems and actually make them cost more if you do not evaluate the systems together. During the value engineering studies, a Commissioning Agent works with the Construction Manager to evaluate sustainable materials and their cost impacts on the project. The sustainable design role that a Commissioning Agent fills during the construction phase is to make sure that the contractors understand what information they need to submit for the LEED documentation in order for the project to receive the final LEED certification.
There is some uncertainty about how many of these costs are truly incremental to the LEED process. Even though all the costs can be attributable to LEED, some of these costs may also be reflected in standard construction practices in certain regions, or in compliance with local codes and standards. Thus, they are not necessarily an additional cost to the project due to the decision to seek LEED certification.

**Sustainability Design Concepts**

Whether going for a sustainability certification or not, the design process should utilize LEED or similar checklists to help with the evaluation of the design and expected performance of the building. The design process should include:

- Design charrettes: used to set project goals including environmental goals
- Site selection and how to use the site sustainably
- Evaluation of existing building reuse
- Energy modeling: used to provide the most energy efficient building that meets the project’s budget
- Day lighting analysis
- Energy efficiency analysis to evaluate:
  - Building envelope
  - HVAC systems
  - Lighting systems
- Sustainable material selection
  - Recycled content
  - Recyclability
  - Local materials
  - Low volatile organic compounds (VOC)
- Commissioning of all systems, to ensure proper installation and operation of the building systems

**Where to Find Additional Help and Resources**

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
Construction

Purpose of this Section

Introduction
This section discusses how to manage project construction by contractors, third parties, and the Agency’s own forces. Emphasis is placed on schedule, cost, and change controls; configuration management and document control; and partnering and value engineering (VE) incentives. Other important topics covered are construction Quality Assurance (QA) and Safety Management. The section discusses construction using the design/bid/build (D/B/B) method, the most frequently selected project delivery method, with additional discussion regarding design-build (D/B), the most common alternative project delivery method.

Construction Phase
In the Construction Phase, construction contractors procured by the Agency, along with the Agency’s own forces and separate specialty contractors, construct the project’s facilities, and fabricate and install equipment. Whether through the D/B/B or D/B method, work is executed in accordance with the plans and specifications developed during the design phase. Following construction, the facilities and equipment are integrated and tested in the commissioning phase.

The project’s highest levels of activity, in terms of numbers of personnel and costs incurred per day, occur during construction. The construction phase also has the most opportunities for cost overruns due to changes and delays, disputes with contractors, and the resulting contract changes and claims.

Role of the Agency in Construction
The best way for you, the Agency’s project manager, to assure successful performance during construction is to make timely and clear decisions. Your project organization and management approach, defined by the Project Management Plan (PMP), should have clear lines of communication and delegated authority. In addition, the Agency should free you, and other staff assigned to the project, of operational responsibilities that could detract from your project duties.

In our example maintenance facility project, a delay during design – due to the Agency not finalizing scope in a timely manner, such as deciding the number of service bays – has a relatively moderate cost impact. The design consultants’ work is put on hold and there may be additional costs for redesign.

A Project Sponsor Agency’s indecision during construction is significantly more costly. Delaying a contractor can result in substantial claims for compensation for extended overhead, lost productivity, overtime, and excess equipment.
Changes in scope can result in expensive re-work such as tearing out and replacing construction. Delaying one contractor may delay other contractors resulting in further claims.

Role of the Consultant Construction Manager

For all but the simplest project, you will need project staff with expertise and experience in construction management beyond the capability and capacity of the Agency’s regular employees, for which the Agency will need to retain a (CM) consultant. The CM acts as the Agency’s representative with the contractors, oversees what work the contractors perform pursuant to the contract drawings and specifications, inspects the work as acceptable, and recommends payment of contractor invoices. The key CM staff person is the resident engineer (RE) , who is principal point of contact with the contractor and is stationed at the site for larger projects, and for smaller projects visits the construction site one or more days a week.

Role of the Design Consultant(s) in Construction

Design consultant(s) who produced the contract drawings and specifications and “sealed” them with their professional engineering seal are referred to as the designer(s) of record; and will continue to provide the following design services during construction:

- Receive and respond to construction contractor Requests for Information (RFI), communicated from the contractor to the designer through the CM. An RFI is a request by the contractor for clarification of the design intent of the drawings and specifications.
- Review and recommend acceptance of contractor submittals called for in the drawings and specifications with respect to the construction deliverables. This includes compliance with Buy America provisions of the contract (whether D/B/B or D/B project delivery).
- Review change requests and estimate costs for change orders.
- Make periodic visits to the site to assure design compliance and provide certification efforts as required by the permitting Agency.

Under D/B contracts, the design consultant is part of the construction contractor’s team, with similar responsibilities as a design consultant under a D/B/B contract, with the exception that changes resulting from internal design modifications are the responsibility of the D/B contracting team. Under D/B contracts, Agencies need to carefully vet the designs prior to construction to gain the time and cost advantages of this expedited project delivery process.

Role of the Contractor in Construction

The role of the construction contractor is to:

- Perform construction work defined by the contract drawings and specifications using means and methods that are the contractor’s responsibility.
- Obtain the permits related to the work for which the contractor is responsible and coordinate the necessary inspections.
### Important to Know

- Partnering builds positive working relationships with contractors and helps avoid disputes.
- Opportunities still exist in construction for contractors to raise Value Engineering proposals.
- Construction schedule control should focus on the high-level management of interfaces between contractors, third parties, and other construction activities.
- Construction cost control should focus on the management of contractor changes.
- Configuration management and document control are needed to support change management.

- Develop and implement a quality control (QC) plan for inspection and testing of the work.
- Develop and implement a safety plan to ensure a safe work site.
- Deliver submittals defined by the contract drawings and specifications, such as:
  - Shop drawings, manufacturer’s drawings, calculations and data, and product information
  - Contract schedule, updated monthly, that notes progress and looks ahead to upcoming work
  - Requests for payment supported by reports as called for in the contract.
  - Record drawings of the as-built work
  - O&M manuals and training of Agency staff called for in the contract specifications
- Submit RFIs to the CM to obtain clarification of the design intent.
- Submit Requests for Change (RFC).

### Construction Management

**Project Organization for Construction**

Figure 6-1 illustrates a project organization structure for construction for a project with three construction contracts (yellow boxes), where the Agency (blue boxes) has retained the services of a CM and a general engineering consultant (GEC) who is the designer of record (tan boxes). Delegation of authority for RFCs is illustrated by the “red arrows” and lines of communication for RFIs by “green arrows.”

![Figure 6-1](image-url)
Division of Management Responsibilities Between the Sponsor and Construction Manager

As project manager, you are the Sponsor’s senior decision maker on the project and should be delegated that commensurate decision making authority. Where the Agency’s governance policy requires actions to be approved by the Agency’s board, the PMP, and Agency administrative procedures should not unduly delay the construction schedule.

Similarly, your project procedures should delegate authority to the CM staff for activities contracted out to the CM. You should base the division of duties between the Agency and CM on who is best suited to the function. Typically, the Agency deals with project’s stakeholders and the CM with the technical matters concerning contractor work. Figure 6-2 identifies generally accepted divisions of functions between the Agency, CM, and GEC during construction.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Performed by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre-contract award reviews</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General provisions</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special conditions</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract milestones fit project master schedule</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special construction conditions and staging</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructability</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractor Integration and Coordination</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designer Interface</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Safety</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Schedule and Cost Control</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design Services (GEC – Designer of Record)</td>
<td>GEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond to contractor RFIs</td>
<td>GEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review contractor submittals</td>
<td>GEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Engineer</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction supervision and inspection</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptance of work and direction of re-work</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipt of:</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submittals</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFIs</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field memos</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change order requests</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract compliance with:</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawings and specifications</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction warranties</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract documentation and as-</td>
<td>CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utilities interface</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review of contractor pay requests for work performed</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Administrator</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration of contractual and commercial terms</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordination with Existing Agency Operations</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Relations</td>
<td>Agency and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Information</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Relations</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Governmental Liaison</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third-Party and Agency Agreements</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Acquisition and Right-of-Way</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment of Environmental Impacts</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of Contractor Invoices</td>
<td>Agency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contract Management and Administration

The RE, who is typically a member of the CM staff, oversees the contractor with respect to what work is to be done pursuant to the contract specifications. The RE is the Agency’s primary field representative and the contractor’s single point of contact. The RE receives/processes contractor RFIs and submittals, has the authority to accept or reject contractor work based on compliance with the contract specifications, receives/processes RFCs, and resolves those changes within the RE’s delegated authority. All changes that affect the design must be approved by the designer of record.

Working in partnership with the RE is a Contract Administrator (CA), who is typically a member of the Agency’s staff. The CA ensures that the contractor is fulfilling contractual obligations and protects the Agency’s rights, expectations, and obligations with respect to managing the contractor. This role is particularly critical when the contractor has submitted RFCs and/or when disputes arise for which the contractor may submit a claim. The CA supports the CM in the prevailing wages, labor, and civil rights provisions of the contract.

The RE and CA meet with the contractor on a regular basis to assess the contractor’s progress. At these meetings, the contractor reports on progress, issues that arise in the field are addressed, and any disputes resolved. If disputes cannot be resolved between the RE and contractor, they are passed up the project management chain of command as delineated in the PMP.

Partnering

As project manager, you can use partnering to demonstrate leadership, build positive working relationships between project parties, and help to avoid and resolve disputes.

Partnering is often incorporated into the contract provisions and typically begins with a half-day to two-day workshop held at the start of the contract and facilitated by an independent partnering consultant. Workshop participants are contractor, stakeholders including representatives from the Project Sponsor Agency, CM, GC, subcontractors, suppliers, government agencies, utilities and third parties, design consultants, and special interest groups such as community and local business leaders and fire/life safety officers. The workshop sets project goals, identifies stakeholder expectations, establishes lines of communication, and anticipates potential issues and the means for their resolution. The partnering session typically concludes with a statement of intended project success, signed by all participants.

Partnering provides an informal disputes resolution process, up through the Agency/CM and contractor chains of command, to address potentially contentious issues – that otherwise might require resolution through negotiation, mediation or dispute review board – as alternatives to expensive and time-consuming arbitration and litigation.
Permitting
While the Agency is responsible for obtaining project clearances, environmental permits, plan checks by the construction permitting agencies (see sections 4 and 5) and master building permits, the contractor is responsible for obtaining permits related to its work. The cost and time involved are the contractor’s responsibility and should be included in the contract price and schedule.

Value Engineering Changes
The project manager’s responsibility to find value engineering (VE) opportunities – to deliver a better and/or lower cost project without compromising quality – does not end with design. Even though the main use of VEs is in the design phase, the project manager can organize a “design scrub” workshop with the designer and contractor before the start of construction, where the contractor can bring questions, comments, and ideas. At a minimum, this meeting will save time during construction in processing RFIs and at best result in VE ideas to save time and/or money. As part of partnering, the project manager should encourage contractors to raise VE ideas and the Agency to include incentives in construction contracts for contractors to propose VE changes to the work called for in the drawings and specifications. If the proposed changes are acceptable to the Agency, the cost savings could be shared between the Agency and the contractor.

Schedule Control
Construction contractors control their detailed schedule progress and critical path. As project manager, your focus is the big picture, the master schedule, to manage interfaces between contractor, third-party, and Agency construction activities. Your approach to master schedule control depends on the project’s size and complexity:

• For larger and more complex projects, you will require the CM to provide a scheduler to monitor construction progress using scheduling software such as Primavera to maintain a master schedule of construction activities and critical path management.

• For very small projects, the use of Microsoft Project or Excel-based bar charts worked out directly with the RE(s) should be adequate to serve as a master schedule for you to oversee construction progress.

Whether the project is large or small, to control the project schedule as project manager you should:

• Create a high-level master schedule and limit detail to what is necessary to control interfaces.

• Focus management on the critical path activities that drive the overall project duration.
• Require each contractor, through the contract terms and conditions, to submit:
  - A baseline contract schedule following award, for your review and approval
  - Monthly updates of progress against the approved baseline schedule
  - A revised baseline schedule for Agency approved contract changes
• Use contractor submissions to update the master schedule and focus management effort on:
  - Changes to the critical path through construction
  - Contractor activities forecast to be late that impact the critical path
  - Interface activities forecast to be late that impact a contractor’s progress
  - Validation of progress on activities that control contract milestone payments
• Incorporate into contract conditions schedule milestones for work critical to project completion and/or interfaces with other contractors, including liquidated damages for late performance.

Cost and Change Control

Cost control’s objective in construction is to complete the contracts within budget. Most construction contracts awarded for projects like the example maintenance facility are a lump-sum fixed price. After award, the contractor is responsible for completing the work at the fixed price bid, unless a change to the contract is agreed that alters the contract price. Consequently, once the fixed price construction contracts are awarded, cost control comes down to managing changes to the contracts so that the original award amounts plus agreed changes are within the construction budget.

The most effective approach to controlling the cost of changes is a management culture that resolves contractor RFCs in a timely, decisive, and equitable manner. Experience shows that it is costly for project managers to allow a backlog of unresolved changes to grow. A backlog creates contention and diverts management attention to the backlog and away from productive project activities.

Figure 6-3 below describes the types of changes that occur during construction and indicates whether the contractor is entitled to receive additional compensation for the change.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Compensation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Project Sponsor Action</td>
<td>- Changing the plans and specifications</td>
<td>Contractor is compensated. If another contractor’s non-performance causes the change, the other contractor should be back-charged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Altering the time to complete the work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Changing the contractors’ means and methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Regulatory changes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Third-party delays where the Project Sponsor is responsible for coordinating the third-party work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differing Site Conditions</td>
<td>- Subsurface conditions differ from those represented by the Project Sponsor</td>
<td>Contractor is compensated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Unusual conditions occur that could not reasonably be anticipated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors or Omissions</td>
<td>- Errors or omissions in the design plans and specifications</td>
<td>Contractor is compensated. The designer should be back-charged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VE</td>
<td>- Contractor proposes a change that will reduce the project costs</td>
<td>Project Sponsor and contractor share the cost savings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractor Action</td>
<td>- Contractor changes means and methods and/or delays project due to their own non-performance</td>
<td>Contractor is not compensated but may be given additional time for third-party delays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Third-party delays where the contractor is responsible for coordinating the third-party work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Management techniques to help you make timely, decisive, and equitable decisions on RFCs include:

- Delegate through the project chain of command responsibility and financial authority to make decisions on contract changes, as illustrated by the red arrows in Figure 6-1.
- Use a change control board made up of senior project staff to make decisions on large, complex, and/or contentious contract changes.
- Include within the construction budget a reserve to cover construction risks assumed by the Agency that could result in contract changes.
- Establish up-front, through the partnering process, an understanding with the contractor of the process for resolving RFCs, including a disputes resolution process.
- Establish the merit of the change based on contract provisions; prepare an independent cost estimate before commencement of the negotiations.
- Upon successful negotiations, place the record of the negotiations and the supporting documents in the file for audit by third parties.
- Support change control with configuration management procedures as discussed below.

**Configuration Management**

The project manager should put in place procedures to provide for the configuration management of contractor RFCs, “red arrows” in Figure 6-1, to:
• Document the different types of change that occur during construction, describe the change’s nature and justification, and indicate whether the contractor merits additional compensation. Documentation includes the RFC, change notice, change orders, supporting correspondence, cost/schedule/scope impacts, meeting minutes, and negotiation records.

• Track and expedite the change resolution process beginning with raising the RFC forms and tracking the RFC’s progress through the review/approval process. Configuration management tracks the party responsible for the next action in the resolution process, such as who is responsible when additional information needs to be prepared and/or analyzed.

• Update project documents to reflect a contract change, including amendments to contracts, drawings and specifications, schedules and budgets, and design documents.

The project manager should put in place procedures to provide for the configuration management of Contractor RFIs and submittals, “green arrows” in Figure 6-1, to:

• Document the CM’s receipt of RFIs from the contractor, track and expedite the CM’s response, and coordinate information from the designer of record where design issues are involved.

• Document the timely receipt of contractor submittals called for in the contract specifications and track their review/acceptance. Submittals include: contractor’s schedule, safety plan, quality plan, shop drawings, progress reports, invoices, record drawings and documents, and operations and maintenance manuals.

Document Control
Document control is the management of records generated during construction. In addition to the records associated with changes, RFIs, and submittals discussed above, document control procedures are needed to handle reporting of construction progress including:

• Site records that include a daily log of site activities, occurrences, weather, equipment, personnel, and communications

• Inspection Report of contractor’s work and practices observed by the CM’s construction inspectors covering construction work performed, instructions given or received, unsatisfactory conditions, delays encountered, manpower and equipment, or other problems

• RE’s weekly Construction Report of all items of importance, conferences with the contractor or other parties, agreements made, special notes regarding equipment or organization, labor conditions, weather or other causes of possible delays, and other matters that have a bearing on the history of the job

• Safety management and accident reports

• QA reports
Progress Payments

Management of progress payments begins with the contract specifications clearly stating how the contractor’s work progress is to be measured, how payments are determined based on the measured progress, and what documents and reports are required to be submitted by the contractor to justify the payment request. Agency should require the contractor to provide a detailed Schedule of Values for bid items with their bids to help expedite payment processing. The project manager should authorize payment only when the contractor’s progress payment request is in full compliance with the contract requirements and the progress claimed has been independently verified by the CM.

Force Account Management

Force account management is the management of construction carried out by the Agency’s own labor forces or the contractor for out of scope work executed on a time and material basis. The project manager should use internal work orders to authorize force account work. The work should be managed so that its completion does not interfere with the major construction contractors. It is also prudent for the project manager to confirm that non-project related force account costs are not allowed to be charged against the project. The CM should observe the activities and keep accurate accounts of time and material used.

Communications Management and Community Outreach

A communications plan is important for projects that affect the local community or businesses, are of potential interest to the media, or that involve political stakeholders. Figure 6-4 sets out basic guidelines for managing communications in each of these areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audience</th>
<th>Communications Guidelines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Community and Business Groups</td>
<td>Identify project impacts of concern to local community and business groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Communicate frequently and timely on the status of the project and associated impacts (community meetings, informational newssheets).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstrate sincere empathy and understanding on adverse impacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Limit media contact to designated Project Sponsor personnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require contractors to refer all media comment to the Project Sponsor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Establish the Project Sponsor’s position and message on project issues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Address media questions so as to communicate the Project Sponsor’s message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cultivate the media to present positive news on project events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political Stakeholders</td>
<td>Above all else, make certain that a political stakeholder is not taken by surprise by a project event, good or bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regularly brief political stakeholders on project events and issues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss project issues with political stakeholders before they have to comment or decide on them in a public venue such as at a board meeting or media interview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Include political stakeholders in project milestone events so that their support and contributions can be recognized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Although communications management is usually thought of as managing damage control when issues arise, communications management also manages good news on the project such as:

- Announcing the project to promote its benefits.

- Holding milestone events to celebrate progress such as:
  - Unveiling the design of a new facility
  - A groundbreaking to mark the start of construction
  - Inaugurating the start-up of a completed facility

- Publicizing any awards or industry recognition achieved by the project or the project team

### Third-Party Coordination

#### Third-Party Work

Third-party work involves the relocation or rearrangement of existing facilities that impact project construction including:

- Utilities (electric power, gas, telephone, cable, etc.)
- Public infrastructure (highways, bridges, streets, sewer, water, etc.)
- Railroads

The timing and duration of third-party work requires careful negotiation with third parties due to the significant time required for the work and the limited influence an Agency has with respect to controlling the work of a third party. Work by third parties needs to be accomplished early in the project because any delays impact the follow-on contractors with the risk of delaying the overall project and incurring additional costs due to contractor delay claims.

#### Third-Party Agreements

It is imperative that the project manager negotiates and has in place agreements with third parties early in design so the project manager can assess their impact on the overall schedule, the utilities have time to plan and carry out any design required, and the project manager identifies interfaces with other contractors and incorporates them into the contract provisions.

The project manager’s negotiations with third parties should address betterment work that the third party intends to carry out. Betterments occur when the third party takes advantage of the relocation to upgrade the relocated facility. The project manager should agree to reimburse the third party only for the cost of relocating the equivalent facility and any additional costs for upgrades should be borne by the third party.
Managing Third-Party Construction

The project manager should make certain there is no ambiguity as to who is responsible for the oversight of the construction work of a third party by explicitly delegating the oversight either to the CM or to the contractor as part of the contract requirements.

Where the CM is responsible for overseeing third party work on behalf of the Agency, the CM needs to coordinate third-party work carefully using the master schedule to monitor the interfaces with other contractors. Due to the limited influence an Agency has over a third party, it is important that the project manager maintains a close and good relationship with third parties and gains an understanding of what motivates a particular third party to expedite their work. Motivation may include a subtle combination of negotiation trade-offs with respect to betterments and applying pressure through the political jurisdiction under which the third party operates.

Where the contractor is responsible for the relocation of a third-party facility, the CM should oversee that the contractor is aggressively managing the interfaces and that responsibility for any delays and their cost impact lie with the contractor.

Quality Management

Scope of Quality Management During Construction

Quality management during the construction phase covers:

- Review of contract documents to verify that quality aspects have been considered
- Surveillance of construction for adherence to quality requirements
- In process and receiving point quality inspections
- Audits of consultant, contractor, and supplier quality programs for adequacy and compliance

Role of the Agency (Project Sponsor) in Quality Management During Construction

The focus of the Agency is quality management and assurance. The PMP should document the project approach to quality management and larger projects may require a subsidiary quality management plan.

The Agency performs scheduled audits and periodic oversight reviews to ensure contractors comply with their quality plans and overall Agency QA policies. To avoid conflicts of interest (COI) between project progress and quality management, the Agency’s quality manager should report outside of the project manager’s chain of command. The project manager should set a tone for the project that emphasizes quality management and supports the Agency independent quality manager.
Role of the Contractor in Quality Management During Construction

Quality is achieved by the contractors performing work in accordance with an approved quality control plan. Construction contractors and suppliers should be required to submit a quality plan appropriate for their SOW to the Agency for approval.

The contractor controls the quality of deliverables by monitoring and verification against the quality criteria specified in the design documents. The quality control activities include construction site activity, installation, inspection, testing, and documentation. Results of inspections and tests are retained by the contractor as objective evidence of acceptability. The contractor turns over the records to the Agency as required by the contract documents. In particular, where quality problems are revealed, these are documented in non-conformance reports (NCRs).

Action on Non-Conforming Work

The contractor is responsible for determining the cause of non-conformance reports (NCRs) and taking appropriate corrective action. If the quality problem continues, the CM should raise the corrective action request to the contractor’s senior management using the partnering concepts agreed to at the project outset. Further actions the CM can take include recommending to the Agency non-payment for the non-conforming work and ultimately issuance by the Agency of a stop work order until proper disposition of the quality problem by the contractor.

Audits

The Agency’s quality management plan should include a comprehensive program of periodic audits. The audits are to verify that the CM and contractors have effectively implemented and are in compliance with applicable elements of the quality management plan. Follow-up audits, including re-audit of deficient areas, will be conducted to make certain that effective corrective action has been taken.
Safety Management During Construction

Scope of Safety Management
Safety management during construction phase covers:

- Planning of work to avoid personal injury and property damage
- Monitoring of work to provide early detection and correction of unsafe practices and conditions
- Protecting adjacent public and private properties to provide for the safety of the public
- Providing safety education and incentive programs
- Complying with federal and state occupational health and safety regulations

Role of the Agency (Project Sponsor) in Safety Management
The Agency’s role is to establish awareness that the prevention of accidents and protection of employees, the public, and property is a top priority. The Agency should have a safety management plan, which can be a sub-section of the PMP or – on larger projects – a separate subsidiary planning document. The requirements of the safety management plan should be incorporated as part of the contract documents.

Through its CM, the Agency monitors individual contractor safety performance for compliance with the above contractual safety requirements and conducts regular contractor safety audits and loss control surveys. When a violation of job safety is observed, the CM advises the Sponsor to notify the contractor in writing to correct the violation.

Role of the Contractor in Safety Management
Contractors are responsible for having a safety management plan in place and for assuring safety on site, safe and healthful performance of their work, prevention of accidents or damage to adjacent public and private property, and safety training of their employees. When a contractor is advised by the Agency of a safety violation, the contractor should respond in writing and immediately take corrective action as set out in their safety management plan.
Enforcement

Contractors enforce safety by developing a Job Hazard Analysis for the work to be undertaken and discussing actions needed to provide safety at jobsite planning meetings. Supervisors draw on their safety experience to direct the actions of those under their direction. Contractor staff should include a safety professional who undertakes surveillance of operations to eliminate sources of potential accidents.

Incentives

Contractors should display signs and posters at the job site to reinforce safety training and as an incentive to maintain interest in job safety with the changing work assignments and jobsite conditions. The Agency should encourage contractors to introduce employee incentive programs that reward safe work performance through personal recognition and prizes such as belt buckles, pins, or lunch boxes.

Audits

Through the CM, the Agency monitors and conducts regular audits of contractor safety performance and notifies the contractor in writing of unsafe practices observed. Should a contractor fail to correct an unsafe condition or practice, the CM may recommend that the Agency issue a stop work order until the condition is corrected.

Accident Investigation and Record Keeping

Accidents should be investigated without delay by the contractor and the investigation should generate recommendations for corrective actions to prevent recurrence of similar accidents. The contractor’s accident report, project records, progress reports, and daily time reports may become important evidential material in any ensuing legal action. The contractor prepares monthly accident summary reports for submission to the CM. These reports allow the CM to assess contractor safety performance as measured by recordable and lost time accident frequency rates and the type and cause of accidents. Federal and state regulations mandate reporting of certain injury accidents to the authorities.

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
7. Commissioning

Purpose of this Section

Introduction

The Pareto principle implies that the last 20 percent of the job took 80 percent of the resources. Advance planning of the commissioning process can help you reduce the risks of prolonging the project in its last strides. Whether you are rolling buses into a new park-and-ride station, moving people into a new maintenance building, or flipping the switch at your new compressed natural gas station, you will need to follow certain key steps to minimize commissioning issues. This section discusses the commissioning phase of a project, which consists of the roles and responsibilities, commissioning plan, owner-furnished equipment (OFE), integrated testing, safety and security and emergency preparedness, operations and maintenance (O&M) manuals, training, as-built drawings, and warranty administration.

Commissioning Phase

Commissioning is a process for validation of building equipment and systems in coordination with operations personnel and third parties. When the project manager allows adequate time and resources in the commissioning phase, the Agency minimizes the risk of delays, cost overruns, and underperforming heating, air conditioning, and ventilation systems; electrical power systems failure and faults; and unreliable support equipment.

In the maintenance facility example, the commissioning process will help validate performance and safety certification of such equipment as fare collection, fueling, bus washer, and lifts. The overall impact of life cycle costs is not only associated with direct operations costs, but also can be attributed to employee productivity associated with indoor environmental conditions.

Understanding of the commissioning phase before you embark on a new project will help you identify and address issues before they could take additional time and cost more dollars. The project manager should begin the project with the end in mind, having a well thought-out commissioning phase early during project initiation.

In the commissioning phase, the project manager assigns responsibility and authority to the commissioning team that will incorporate checks and balances to ensure that the documentation, manufacturing requirements, and systems, equipment, and operations are integrated, validated, and accepted.
The United States Green Building Council (USGBC) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED®) 2.2 Energy and Atmosphere (Prerequisite 1) mandates that fundamental building commissioning be incorporated for LEED certified construction projects. The emphasis for building commissioning has taken a completely new dimension because of LEED. Commissioning is recognized as an effective way to ensure that the energy design requirements are being met. This commissioning phase should be described in detail in the PMP and followed by development of the Commissioning Plan.

Role of Agency
Early in the planning and design process the project manager should assign a champion for the facility commissioning. In our maintenance facility example, this champion could be staff from operations or engineering with prior relevant experience. This champion would be partially or fully relieved of his or her normal duties to focus on the commissioning work. Alternatively, a commissioning consultant could be hired. Under the general supervision of the project manager, the Agency will need to support the commissioning manager with assignment of personnel from safety, security, operations, engineering, maintenance, procurement and warranty administration, customer service, public relations, and other functions as may be necessary.

Role of Consultants and Contractors
The project manager may feel that the Agency is already paying for commissioning through project management, the construction contract, and construction management services and may wonder why they should expend additional dollars to perform tasks that the CM and GC should be providing. While the many aspects of commissioning are included in the scope of the above parties, there will always be gaps in requirements due to interfaces that are out of the control and/or capacity and capability of one party or another. The level of effort by the commissioning manager and the team varies from one project to another, but the assignment of responsibility and authority to a single point of responsibility who can take ownership for this phase is a necessity. For example, a maintenance facility project is a complex undertaking and will require a high level of capacity and capability for commissioning to assure the project is completed within the schedule and budget and realizes life cycle cost savings.
### Figure 7-1 Typical Responsibility Matrix for Commissioning Tasks (Design-Bid-Build Delivery)
The Commissioning Plan

The commissioning plan is a living document and a supporting document to the PMP. The plan should be started early in the design phase and further refined with additional details as information becomes available at the completion of design and well in advance of construction completion. Under the general direction of the project manager, the commissioning manager will prepare the commissioning plan. The plan provides guidance and details the key elements of the commissioning process including roles and responsibilities, critical equipment list, OFE, integrated testing, safety and security and emergency preparedness, O&M manuals, training, as-built drawings, and the warranty administration.

The commissioning plan is prepared with significant input from all internal and external stakeholders, and in close coordination with the design and construction teams. Prepared properly and used as a living document, the plan will assure all requirements are properly incorporated in the design and construction bid documents and executed during construction and commissioning.

Figure 7-2 shows a typical commissioning list for equipment used in a maintenance facility project. There may be many other items that will have to be added to this list for your project. Items checked are assumed to be required for LEED certification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEED®</th>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>HVAC System (and all integral equipment controls):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Pumps (chilled water) if required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Chillers if required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Piping, cleaning, and purging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Chemical treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Ductwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Air handling units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Heating/A.C. (including controls, piping, pumps, compressors) recovery &amp; ventilating units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Split systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Air terminal units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Testing, adjusting, and balancing work (TAB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Unit heaters (area, cabinet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Building automation system (controlled devices, control loops, and system integration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Fans &amp; ventilation systems including fume and exhaust evacuation systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Variable frequency drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Humidifiers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**LEED® ITEM** | **Mechanical Systems: (As related to facilities and processes including primary control systems)** | **电气系统** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>16. Building envelope</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17. Overhead roll-up doors and grilles</td>
<td>29. Fire alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>18. Boilers</td>
<td>30. Emergency power system and transfer switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Bus wash and reclamation system</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Elevators (freight and passenger)</td>
<td>31. UPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Bulk fluid storage and distribution systems including but not limited to diesel fuel, fuel oil, motor oil, antifreeze, chassis grease, automatic transmission fluid, gear oil, windshield washer fluid, and waste fluids</td>
<td>32. Wiring devices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Oil/water separator systems</td>
<td>33. Transient voltage suppression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Paint spray booths</td>
<td>34. Secondary unit substations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Compressed air system</td>
<td>35. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Domestic water system (plumbing, fixtures etc.)</td>
<td>36. Enclosed controllers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Piping</td>
<td>37. Panel boards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Monorail systems and traveling cranes</td>
<td>38. Dry-type transformers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39. Grounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40. Battery charging system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>41. Level gauging and leak detection systems for bulk fluid systems and tanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>42. Fuel management system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>43. Bus traffic control system and pedestrian protection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>44. Data communications system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>45. Integrated telephone and paging systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>46. Security system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>47. Closed-circuit television (CCTV) system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>48. Time clock system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>49. Emergency lights and signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50. Emergency eye wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>51. Fire protection (including but not limited to fire pump, standpipe, and sprinkler systems)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>52. Gas detection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Owner-Furnished Equipment

Almost every job will have some level of owner-furnished equipment (OFE), either due to long lead procurement cycles of equipment or the high-level of specialty involved, or when equipment requirements are not known during the engineering phase. The OFE can be any equipment that is not furnished and installed by the construction contractors but will require installation facilities by the contractor or is required by the project to be fully operational. The OFE could be furniture, office equipment, telephones, audio-visual equipment, operational signage, fare collection equipment, etc.

As the project manager, you are responsible to fully integrate and account for the OFE with the rest of the construction project work. Lack of OFE coordination with the design and construction is often the main source of schedule delays and technical difficulties.

In the example maintenance facility project, the Agency may decide to furnish its own telephone system and furniture. The project manager should assure that the equipment is ordered and delivered in time for installation and that the construction contractor has the necessary facilities ready for operation of the OFE. The fare collection supplier may furnish a perfectly factory tested fare collection system. However, if the contractor does not provide adequate power and signal conduits, it may not have the power and communication cables to be operational when it arrives on site. The commissioning manager will be focused on installation and testing. However, assignment of the commissioning manager early on may help catch an omission in integration of OFE early in design or during construction and provide an opportunity for the parties to close any gaps.

Another example is signage. The architect may have specified all building code related signage. However, in every project, some operational signage that will need to be defined and ordered under direction of the project manager and installed under supervision of the commissioning manager.
Integrated Testing and Start-Up

The objectives of integrated testing are: verification of the proof of design and construction tests done by the contractor and observed by the construction manager (CM). Usually this information is available through the CM or the contractor: assurance of compliance with performance requirements for the system as a whole; coordination and compliance with third party requirements such as fire, police, etc.; and documentation of integrated testing results for safety and security certification. The project typically fulfills the above objective by developing an Integrated Test Plan (ITP) to describe the test program. The ITP supports the activities to verify compatibility of all new and old elements in the system.

The ITP should encompass:
- Organizational roles and responsibilities
- Testing objectives
- Test approval process
- All planned tests and schedule
- Test procedures
- Test reports
- Documentation requirements

Test types include: proof of construction tests including contractual material tests, factory/plant tests, system tests, installation checkout tests, inspections, and acceptance tests to provide verification of functional performance and contract compliance. These tests will provide verification, validation, and documentation of system performance and its operational characteristics. Finally, the Agency may want simulated operations tests to provide an opportunity for developing operating procedures, training, and familiarization among O&M staff. FTA C5800.1 provides further detail on verification of operational readiness as well as verification of hazard and vulnerability resolution.

Safety and Security Certification

The word “safety” is used to deal with hazards (due to unintentional acts) and “security” to deal with vulnerabilities (due to intentional acts). While both apply to all modes of vehicles and infrastructure construction, the projects that are the subject of this Handbook fall mainly under bus transit mode. The standards that apply include: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE); Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers; and federal, city, and state building codes. In addition, for bus operations the project manager should consider regulations by the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration (FMCSA), Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), FTA, Drug and Alcohol, and the applicable state’s Department of Motor Vehicle regulations.
The project manager, with support by the safety and security personnel, typically self-certifies the project by developing and implementing a Safety and Security Certification Plan (SSCP). The SSCP is responsible for specifying the process and activities to ensure all safety and security requirements have been met and documented to achieve operational readiness through final certification of the project. The SSCP is the agency tool for managing an effective certification program detailing the following activities:

- Develop a certifiable elements list.
- Develop safety and security design criteria to identify project concerns.
- Develop and complete design checklists to verify contract specifications and safety and security criteria are met.
- Develop and complete construction checklists to verify components, construction, and installation requirements are in accordance with design.
- Identify and monitor integrated tests.
- Provide safety, security, and emergency preparedness training classes to transit operations and maintenance staff.
- Provide or develop operations and maintenance manuals.
- Provide rules and procedures training to operations and maintenance staff.
- Provide training to emergency response personnel and conduct necessary emergency drills.
- Prepare and transmit the Safety and Security Certification Verification Report (SSCVR) to management and oversight personnel.

The SSCVR documents the final safety and security certification of conformance of the project approving it is ready for revenue service. The report confirms all formal safety and security certification documentation has been reviewed and work has been completed in conformance with criteria, or a work-around has been effectively developed which does not hinder the safety or security of the project. All work-arounds require a hazard analysis prior to revenue service to analyze and effectively mitigate the hazard to an acceptable risk level for a defined period. The most executive manager approves and signs the project signs the final SSC.

In addition, the Agency should establish strong ties with emergency response agencies and resources to provide mutual assistance in an event of major emergencies on or near the project. Emergency preparedness requires working with local emergency management groups to develop procedures and contingency plans specific to the location and the nature of the project, and perform specific drills to simulate emergencies.
Operational and Maintenance Manuals

The project manager must assure that the technical requirements for O&M manuals are addressed by the designers of record and specify schedule requirements for submittal of the O&M manuals well in advance of construction completion. The contractor prepares and submits the O&M manuals in accordance with specification requirements. The specifications should address the systems and subsystems for which manuals are required. It should outline the media (hard copy, digital, etc.), the quantities, formatting, and schedule for delivery.

You should consider liquidated damages to be specified and assessed to the contractor if the O&M manuals and follow-on training are not provided within the specified period well in advance of the operations. The O&M manuals typically contain items listed in Figure 7-3.

Figure 7-3
Typical O&M Manual Content

- Equipment Ratings & Specifications Including Specific Product Data Sheet
- Standards/Code Compliance
- Training and Safe Practices
- Receiving and Handling
- Inspection and Installation
- Description and Operation
- Factory Specified Tests
- Control Descriptions
- Environmental Considerations
- Inspection Maintenance & Troubleshooting
- Required Forms to Document Maintenance
- Authorized Factory Representative Contact Information for Technical Support and Replacement Parts
- Warranty
- Renewal Parts Listing and Views
- Figures/Drawings
Training and Transition to Operations

Under general direction of the project manager and through supervision of the commissioning manager, may develop a training plan to summarize all training that is needed and employees subject to training requirements. The equipment training is typically provided by the contractor or its subcontractors or suppliers and takes place after the sponsor’s acceptance of equipment and O&M manuals, and before operations begin. The project manager will work closely with the commissioning manager to schedule personnel in training classes. When a large number of personnel are involved, the project may choose to have several experienced personnel with ability to teach, take part in train-the-trainer sessions (if available) and begin training others. The contractor must submit a detailed outline of the training program with the O&M manuals. The commissioning manager will review the material for compliance with construction specifications and get input from the specific group being trained.

Similarly, training must also be developed and delivered for new or updated plans, procedures, or rules applicable to the project. Training programs should be developed to support the effective and safe implementation of revenue service through standard operation and maintenance practices. Training programs for critical safety and security practices should include qualification components, such as an exams or field practical to verify participants have retained and can skillfully execute the tasks assigned. Training documentation must be maintained to ensure all employees have met and continue to meet training requirements while employed by the agency.

The commissioning manager with assistance from the contractors and training managers will ensure that all training requirements are met and the training material is turned over to the Agency.

As-Built Documentation

The project manager should assure the construction contract calls for the contractor to mark up the changes on the drawings and specifications as they occur during construction and turn in a set of marked up drawings and specifications. Under general direction of the project manager, the construction manager verifies the construction contractor is keeping the drawings up to date.

Important to Know

- To assure a smooth start in operations, the personnel must be trained well in advance of the project completion.
- When a large number of personnel are involved, the project manager can consider training Agency personnel as trainers to train their groups.

- The construction contractor should mark up the drawing as changes occur.
- The designer of record reviews, approves, and documents the changes into final as-built drawings and conformed specifications.
The project manager should provide in the agreement with the designer of record scope for the designer to review, approve, and produce the final as-built drawings.

The commissioning manager will use the as-built documentation as necessary to commission the project. As-built drawings will save significant life cycle costs and avoid potential safety hazards during operations and life of the facilities. The commissioning manager will review the final as-built drawings and assure they are a part of the final commissioning report.

**External Stakeholder Reviews**

Prior to revenue service, the agency may be subject to reviews by FTA, PMOC, SSO agency, or other external agencies. The scope of these reviews should be coordinated with the external stakeholder and documented in the SSMP, SSCP or other applicable plans. As a result of these reviews, findings may be identified which require corrective action prior to project revenue service or following revenue service if proposed work-arounds are approved. The corrective action plans shall be developed, communicated, and implemented as directed by the external stakeholder.

**Post-Delivery Audit for Rolling Stock**

Prior to transfer of title for revenue service vehicles, Buy America regulations require the Agency to conduct a Post-Delivery audit verifying the manufacturer’s compliance. This audit may be conducted by either the project sponsor or its consultant. Requirements for post-delivery audit are stipulated in 49 CFR 663, and additional guidance is provided on FTA’s website.

**Warranty Administration**

Warranty is an assurance by the manufacturer in writing to the Agency that assumes stipulated responsibility for the performance of the equipment supplied for a specified period after acceptance. The project manager should be careful not to accept a piece of equipment before it is ready for overall operations. The project manager should consider provisions for extended warranty when equipment must arrive and must be accepted well in advance of total operations. Under general direction of the project manager, the commissioning manager will work closely with the procurement department personnel who will check the equipment warranties against contractual requirements.

**Where to Find Additional Help and Resources**

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
8. Project Closeout

Purpose of this Section

Introduction
Completing a project requires procedures to closeout project contractual and administrative activities.

Role of the Agency in Project Completion
Closing contractual activities requires the Agency’s project manager to oversee final settlement of project contracts, acceptance of contract deliverables, collection of contract documents and records (such as as-built drawings, operation and maintenance manuals, and warranties, etc.), and approval of final payments. The project manager’s responsibilities for administrative closeout relate to demobilizing the project team and completing activities with other stakeholders, arranging the disposition of project records, closing of funding and financing agreements, and performing an evaluation of project success and lessons learned.

Contractual Closeout

Construction Contracts
The project manager, commissioning manager, construction manager/resident engineer, and contract administrator, should follow the procedures and actions specified in each contract’s terms and conditions to settle and close the project’s construction contract agreements.

For a typical construction contract, you will need to confirm the completion and acceptability of the following activities:

Manuals and Training – The contractor delivers the operations and maintenance (O&M) manuals for the facilities constructed and equipment installed and provides any associated training of Agency staff in their use.

Beneficial Occupancy – A contract is substantially complete when the permitting authority issues a Certificate of Beneficial Occupancy to the Agency and then the Agency can occupy and begin use of the facility and equipment. It is important on taking beneficial occupancy that you ensure the construction manager/resident engineer prepares a punch list of open items for the contractor to complete.

Guaranties and Warranties – With beneficial occupancy confirm that the contractor has initiated the guaranties and warranties associated with the facility and equipment.

Record or As-built Drawings – The construction manager/resident engineer confirms that the contractor has submitted the record drawings that show the as-built condition of the constructed facility and installed equipment.

Important to Do
- Prepare a punch list of incomplete contractor items.
- Lead a final walk through inspection of constructed facility.
- Resolve outstanding changes/claims.
- Develop a plan to demobilize Agency and consultant staff.
- Keep project team’s attention focused on closeout activities.
- Assess and document lessons learned on project.
- Obtain project acceptance from principal stakeholders.
- Celebrate project completion.

FEDERAL TRANSIT ADMINISTRATION 104
Final Inspection – Lead a final walk through inspection of the facility to confirm that the contractor has completed the open punch list items and all work is completed correctly and satisfactorily.

Resolve Outstanding Change/Claim Disputes – You should make every effort to resolve any outstanding contract disputes so that they do not drag on past contract and project completion.

Final Payment – With the above activities satisfactorily completed, you can approve the final payment to the contractor and the Agency can close the contract.

Commissioning – Assure that all other commissioning activities have been completed in a satisfactory manner.

**Important to Know**

- A contract’s terms and conditions specify the actions needed for final settlement and closure.
- A contract is substantially complete when the permitting authority issues Certificate of Beneficial Occupancy.
- A contract audit is needed to verify appropriateness of costs invoiced on cost plus type contracts.
- A contract audit examines direct labor, other direct cost, and indirect overhead charges.

**Professional Service Contracts**

Although closing a professional service contract, for such as design or management services, does not involve as many milestones and activities as a construction contract, you still need to follow the completion procedures dictated by the terms of the professional service contract.

Typical closeout activities for a professional service contract include:

**Verification of Scope Completion** – Confirm that the professional service contractor has satisfactorily delivered the services called for in the contract SOW.

**Contract Audit** – Where contract payments are on a cost plus fee basis, the contract provisions should give the Agency the right to audit the contractor’s costs. The audit should verify items such as direct labor rates, support for time charges, support for other direct costs, and justification for overhead rates.

**Final Payment and Release of Retention** – With scope completed satisfactorily and audit completed, you can approve the final payment and release of any retention held back from prior contract payments pending satisfactory completion of services and audit of costs.
Administrative Closeout

Project Demobilization
Managing the demobilization of the project can often test the project manager’s administrative and interpersonal skills in order to address the following end of project issues:

- Key project staff that see the end of the project coming and acquire positions elsewhere in the Agency before their project role and duties are complete.
- Or the opposite, Agency project staff whose duties are complete and are difficult to relocate off the project because there is no immediate position for them to move to.
- Professional service consultants, whose role is concluding, prematurely transfer key staff to newer long-term assignments and/or endeavor to stretch out their services to maintain revenue.

To manage demobilization as project manager, you should develop a staffing plan for the final phase of the project that plans the reduction in the Agency’s own forces and those of the professional service consultants. You should work with the Agency’s human resources to help manage the transition of staff off the project, ease their anxieties surrounding what their next role is, and provide incentives for key staff to remain on the project and defer moving on. Similarly, you should meet with the principals of the professional service firms to reach agreement on a timetable for winding down their services as the project concludes.

The project manager’s final challenge once the demobilization plans are in place is to keep the project team’s attention focused on the tasks needed to complete the project as opposed to what they will be doing once the project is over.

Closure of Project Financing and Funding
The project manager will need to work with the Agency’s finance staff to close out the funding to the project. Where a project receives FTA funds, Circular 5010.1D Grant Management Guidelines sets out the activities required of an Agency to satisfy the FTA that all the Agency’s project responsibilities and work are completed and the associated financial records closed.

Disposition of Project Records
The project manager has to arrange for project records to be transferred to the Agency’s document control function. Project records required to be maintained will be determined by a combination of the Agency’s own records retention policy, retention requirements imposed by parties funding the project such as the FTA, and any special requirements due to contract provisions. Should there be an unresolved change/claim dispute, it is important that all records pertaining to the contract and dispute also be retained.
Project Evaluation

Before the project is over and key project staff has dispersed, it is desirable for the project manager to hold a lessons learned session. The lessons learned should focus on identifying project strengths and weaknesses with recommendations on how to improve future performance on projects. To be most effective the project manager should encourage the project team to identify and document lessons learned through the project life cycle so that a database of lessons learned experience is built up for consideration at the final lessons learned session. Lessons learned can consider technical, managerial, and process aspects of the project.

Stakeholder Closure

Perhaps the most important aspect of completing the project is to achieve acceptance and closure of the project by the project’s principal stakeholders, those who sponsored the project, and those that are to use the facilities and equipment delivered by the project. The Project Authorization and PRD documents formally set out the expectations for the project. The project manager should now receive formal confirmation that with the handover of the project deliverables from the project team to the operational users, the Project Sponsor Agency and users have officially accepted the project deliverables.

This formal acceptance is also the opportunity to celebrate project success with some ceremony to mark the opening of the new facility and equipment into operations.

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section includes a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
9.

Project Support

Purpose of this Section

Introduction
Project support functions are administrative in nature and typically take place throughout all phases of the project cycle in order to support the management and control of project activities. Topics discussed in this section include: project control, project accounting, grant management and clerical/administrative support; procurement and contract administration of professional services, construction, equipment and supplies, and third-party agreements; project communications; and records management.

Project Control

Project Control Process
Project control provides the systems and procedures to track and control the project’s scope, cost, and schedule to support project management’s objective of delivering a scope that meets project requirements, within the budget and on schedule. Scope, cost, and schedule are interdependent on a project, as depicted in Figure 9-1. For example, a change that increases the project scope typically is associated with an increase to the project cost or schedule or both.

Figure 9-1: Project Control Triangle

Illustrating scope, cost, and schedule as three sides of a triangle underlines their interdependency. A change to one (side) affects one or both of the other (sides).
Important to Know

- Project control compares actual performance with plan (baseline), identifies variances, and corrects adverse variances.
- A Work Breakdown Structure is a hierarchical breakdown of project scope into its component parts and their elements of work.
- Scope control (configuration management) defines the project deliverables of the Work Breakdown Structure, controls changes to deliverables and tracks the impact of changes.
- Schedule control defines the dates for performing project activities of the Work Breakdown Structure elements of work, identifies the relationship between activities, identifies activities that determine the project total duration (critical path), and tracks and controls changes to the schedule.
- Cost control defines the budget for the Work Breakdown Structure components, tracks actual costs, estimates the costs at completion, and controls changes to costs and variances of forecast costs from budget.

The fundamental principles of the control processes are the same for controlling scope, cost, or schedule. They are to:

- Establish a control baseline
- Track project performance against the baseline
- Continually forecast performance at completion and compare to the baseline
- Identify changes to the project and assess their impact on performance against the baseline
- Take management action to correct adverse forecast and/or change variances.

The role of the Agency and its project manager is to establish the management approach to project control and ensure that it is followed during the execution of each phase of the project. You should document the approach to project control in the Project Management Plan (PMP). For larger projects, you may need to retain the services of a program management or project controls consultant to provide staff with specialist expertise in scope, cost, and schedule controls.

Scope Control

The project requirements, as set out in the Project Requirements Document discussed in Section 2, determine the project scope described in terms of the project deliverables. The project scope is alternatively referred to as the project configuration. Configuration management is the project control process for scope control.

For engineering/construction projects, such as our example bus maintenance facility project, project scope is defined and quantified by the drawings and specifications, and reflects applicable environmental requirements described in Section 4. In successive phases of the project, the design drawing and specifications develop from the design concepts and technical studies of conceptual design/project development, through engineering packages, and the as-built drawings at the end of construction.

In project development, you analyze alternative design concepts and select the preferred design configuration for the required project deliverables. It is at the conclusion of project development prior to engineering that you should establish the scope baseline, sometimes called the technical baseline, for the project. Configuration management provides the project control process to identify, assess, and track the impact on the scope baseline of changes to the project requirements. Changes in
Project requirements may be due to changes in owner requirements, unforeseen project conditions, changes in governing regulations, value engineering proposals, etc.

An important project control tool in configuration management and the other project control processes for cost and schedule control is the Work Breakdown Structure (WBS). The WBS is a hierarchical structure that breaks down the scope of the project deliverables into their component and subcomponent parts and then further down into the subcomponents’ design and construction work package elements. Figure 9-2 is a simplified WBS for our example maintenance facility project.

In a complete WBS the above work elements would be broken down into more detailed work packages. For example: WBS 1.1 Planning Studies could be broken down further into 1.1.1 Functional Studies, 1.1.2 Site Selection, and 1.1.3 Technical Studies; and WBS 2.3 Final Design broken down further by design package into 2.3.1 Utility Relocations, 2.3.2 Facility Structure, and 2.3.3 Major Equipment Procurement and Installation.

Figure 9-2  Work Breakdown Structure, Maintenance Facility Project
The work package elements are assigned to the design consultants, contractors, third parties, and the Agency’s own forces. In addition to using the WBS to define scope, budgets and cost estimates are developed for each WBS work package element and the activities of the WBS work packages are scheduled to define and control the project’s cost and schedule as discussed below.

Prior to project development phase completion, the project manager will budget and baseline each task. However, at the conclusion of project development the control baseline for the scope should be established and supported by the technical studies, conceptual designs, and project development drawings and specifications. As the engineering and construction phases progress, configuration management requires that any changes to project requirements are identified, their impact on the project scope assessed, and the configuration of the affected drawings and specifications amended. It is important that you make certain that project changes do not result in compromising the intended project deliverables in terms of required performance and/or quality and take the necessary management action to ensure the current configuration delivers the required standard of performance and quality as defined by the control scope baseline.

Often the scope changes also result in changes to the scopes of work of the design consultant and/or construction contracts, in which case the project’s change control processes should be used to process the associated contract changes. Additionally, the impact on the project’s cost and schedule needs to be assessed with corresponding updates to cost and schedule as discussed below.

The final phase of configuration management is to document the as-built scope of the project deliverables, through receiving the as-built drawings from the construction contractors.

**Cost Control**

Cost control is based on continually refining the project’s cost estimate at completion as the project progresses and taking management action to address adverse variances in the cost estimate compared to the baseline budget. As with the scope baseline, the cost baseline is developed at the conclusion of project development. You should manage the project development so that the baseline cost estimate for the selected scope configuration is in an acceptable range of the estimated project cost at the time the project was authorized and the project requirements definition prepared.

The baseline cost estimate must include allocated and overall unallocated contingency funds that are established based on deterministic or probabilistic risk assessment.
It is important to understand the reliability of the cost estimate. To accomplish this you should require your cost estimators to provide an estimating range in addition to the single point estimate, so for our example maintenance facility the cost baseline project budget estimate is expressed as $40 million with a 90 percent confidence that the cost will be in the range of $35 to $50 million. As the design and construction phases progress, the range should become narrower for the same level of confidence. The ranges can be used to establish the levels of cost contingency to include in the project budget. Risk assessment techniques are helpful in both identifying cost impact of project risks and the resulting estimating range for a given level of confidence.

You should track the project’s cost performance against the baseline budget as design and construction progresses and contracts are awarded, costs incurred, project changes identified, and cost trends forecasted based on expected future scope and/or contract changes. The project’s cost at completion should be continually reforecast and management action taken to address adverse cost variances.

The WBS is again the key control tool. The baseline budget and cost estimates are developed for the WBS work package elements. The assignment of the elements to design and construction work packages provide the means to track the costs as they develop by the same categories as the work is performed. In addition, as the scope control is also by the same work package elements, the WBS provides for consistency in assessing changes in scope and assessing the corresponding impact on costs for the affected WBS work package elements. Figure 9-3 provides an example format for a WBS cost control report for the bus maintenance facility project.

You should include formal cost reviews at the following project milestones and major events:

- At the completion of the Project Development and Engineering Phases
- Construction package design reviews
- Construction contract award
- Major contract changes
## SECTION 9: PROJECT SUPPORT

### WBS Element/Package

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WBS Element/Package</th>
<th>Baseline Budget</th>
<th>Committed</th>
<th>Incurred</th>
<th>Estimate to Complete</th>
<th>Estimate at Completion</th>
<th>Variance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Planning and Conceptual Design</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Planning Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 Functional Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 Site Selection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3 Technical Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Environmental Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Construction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Commissioning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Management &amp; Administration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Contingency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

- **Baseline Budget**: Control budget against which project cost performance is measured and controlled.
- **Committed**: Value of project contractual commitments to contractors and/or internal work orders to Agency’s own forces.
- **Incurred**: Project costs to date incurred by contractors and/or Agency’s own forces.
- **Estimate to Complete**: Forecast of estimated costs to go in order to finish the remaining work on the WBS element/package: for construction in design - the forecast is based on the current capital cost estimate for the construction package; for contract work in progress - the forecast is based on the outstanding commitment (b - c) plus the forecast value of any pending and/or expected contract changes; for Agency own forces work - the forecast is based on the expected cost of the remaining work.
- **Estimate at Completion**: Forecast of the final cost of the work element/package (c + d).
- **Variance**: Comparison of the Estimate at Completion to the Baseline Budget (a - e): positive variance indicate forecast project costs better than budget; negative variances are forecast to be worse than budget and indicate to the project manager where action needs to be taken to address forecast adverse project cost performance.

### Figure 9-3  Cost Control Report, Maintenance Facility Project

Each construction package design review should include an updated estimate of the package’s capital cost. The review process should include a consideration of the capital cost in relationship to the baseline budget and the technical scope. Any adverse variances should be addressed and the level of design contingency assessed based on the level of confidence of the estimate. Following award of the construction contract, the costs should be examined to take account of differences between the contract amount and the 100 percent design estimate and the level of contingency necessary to cover for risks during construction that remain with the Agency and could result in contract changes. Where major contract changes have occurred, are pending, or forecast, the expected final contract cost should be updated. At each of these types of review, management action should be taken to address adverse cost trends so that the final cost of the project can be maintained within the cost baseline.
You should have in place cost control procedures to provide for transfers in budget between WBS elements as the project evolves so that, for example, cost savings in one area can be used to offset overruns elsewhere, or scope is transferred along with budget from one area of the project to another. The procedures should provide for the appropriate levels of management approval to transfer budget and the maintenance of an audit trail of budget transfers so the current budget can be tied back to the original baseline.

Unforeseen events may result in the need to make hard trade-off decisions between scope, budget, and schedule. For example, a part of the project’s scope may have to be reduced in order to keep costs within budget following an unforeseen change that exceeds the outstanding contingency. Alternatively, an increase in the project’s final cost may be agreed to in order to keep the project on schedule following delays in progress due to unforeseen construction conditions. Project procedures should require that significant changes in scope, schedule, or budget from the baseline receive the approval of the project’s sponsors, which in our example maintenance facility project would be the Agency’s board.

Good cost control also requires regular reporting of project costs on a monthly basis. Cost reports should present the baseline budget compared to contract commitment, incurred costs, approved and pending changes, forecast cost trends, estimated costs at completion, and variance between the cost at completion and budget (see Figure 9-3). You should use the WBS as the means to prepare reports at various levels of summary and detail.

Schedule Control
The WBS is again the starting point for schedule control. Work activities are identified for each of the WBS work package elements and form the building blocks of the project schedule. For relatively simple projects you can represent the activities using a bar chart schedule and the time from the beginning of the first bar (start) and the end of the last bar (finish) is the duration of the project. More complex projects, such as our example maintenance facility project, require a critical path method (CPM) schedule.

To develop a CPM schedule the activities are arranged into a precedence diagram network that shows the logical start and finish relationships between each activity along with the estimated duration of each activity. The logic of the precedence diagram and activity durations is then input into a CPM software scheduling program that calculates the project’s critical path. The critical path is the path through the network that has the longest duration and therefore determines the duration of the project. The sums of the durations along all other paths through the network are shorter than the critical path. Figure 9-4 shows a simplified precedence and critical path for the maintenance facility project.
The critical path is important because it focuses management’s attention on the activities that contribute to the longest path through the schedule. If the critical activities are completed on time then the project will finish on schedule. In practice it is prudent to focus schedule control on critical and near critical activities on other paths. A near critical activity is identified by the size of its float. The float is the number of days the activity can be delayed before it becomes critical. Activities with little float are near critical (and by definition activities on the critical path have zero float).

As with the scope and cost baseline, the schedule baseline should be developed at the close of conceptual design/project development. As the project progresses through engineering and construction the schedule performance is monitored, the outstanding durations of incomplete activities estimated, the critical path updated and compared to baseline. You should then take management action to address schedule slippages of critical and near critical activities.

When changes to the project occur, it is important to assess their impact on the schedule along with their scope and cost impact. If a change results in a delay to a contractor, where the change is not due to the contractor’s own non-performance, then in addition to compensating the contractor for the cost impact of the change, the contractor should also be allowed the additional time to complete the work brought about by the delay. Consequently, it is important that you understand and manage the schedule relationships between contractors in addition to overseeing the schedule performance of each specific contract.

Figure 9-4  **Precedence Diagram and Critical Path, Maintenance Facility Project**

The critical path is important because it focuses management’s attention on the activities that contribute to the longest path through the schedule. If the critical activities are completed on time then the project will finish on schedule. In practice it is prudent to focus schedule control on critical and near critical activities on other paths. A near critical activity is identified by the size of its float. The float is the number of days the activity can be delayed before it becomes critical. Activities with little float are near critical (and by definition activities on the critical path have zero float).

As with the scope and cost baseline, the schedule baseline should be developed at the close of conceptual design/project development. As the project progresses through engineering and construction the schedule performance is monitored, the outstanding durations of incomplete activities estimated, the critical path updated and compared to baseline. You should then take management action to address schedule slippages of critical and near critical activities.

When changes to the project occur, it is important to assess their impact on the schedule along with their scope and cost impact. If a change results in a delay to a contractor, where the change is not due to the contractor’s own non-performance, then in addition to compensating the contractor for the cost impact of the change, the contractor should also be allowed the additional time to complete the work brought about by the delay. Consequently, it is important that you understand and manage the schedule relationships between contractors in addition to overseeing the schedule performance of each specific contract.
Project Administration

Project Accounting
The Agency’s accounting department performs accounting functions for the project including:

- Developing the fiscal year budgets for the project
- Recording and reporting expenditures in the Agency’s accounts
- Review and payment of contractor invoices
- Management of project cash flow

The total project budget typically spans multiple project years. Agency accounting works with project staff to develop the fiscal year budgets as part of the Agency’s annual budget. In addition to being by fiscal year, the accounting project budget is broken down by the Agency’s chart of accounts as opposed to the WBS breakdown used for project control. For these reasons an Agency that relies only on accounting information to manage project costs (that is fiscal year and chart of account based) and does not create a project cost control system (that is project-to-date and WBS-based) finds that cost data appropriate for accounting controls is not helpful from a project cost management point of view.

Similarly, accounting records project expenditures by the Agency’s chart of accounts and report the results against the fiscal year budgets. In setting up procedures to process project transactions, you should give careful consideration to ensuring that costs are coded by both their WBS and accounting codes so that they can be processed through both the cost control and accounting systems.

The project team is responsible for reviewing consultant and contractor invoices to confirm that the services or work invoiced has been acceptably completed. Accounting’s role is to review the invoices to confirm that they are computed accurately, that the charges billed are contractually eligible, and that the charge rates and/or prices are consistent with the contract terms. Following review, accounting is responsible for paying the invoice having made adjustments for retainage and any disallowed charges.

Accounting, through its treasury function, manages the cash flow for the project. Accounting works with the project team to project both the near and long term cash flow requirements for the project so that funds are made available for project expenditures without tying up the Agency’s cash. Accounting invests funds raised for the project that are not immediately required in a mix of short and long term investments based on the cash flow projections.
Grant Management

Grant management involves:

- Application for grant funding from the FTA and/or state and local funding agencies
- Reporting of project progress
- Drawing down and management of grant funds during project implementation.

An Agency submits grant applications to the FTA through its Transit Award Management System (TrAMS). The Agency’s primary point of contact with the FTA during the grant application process is the FTA community planner. The FTA regional engineer is available to provide active monitoring and technical assistance through the application process.

Major capital project funding from FTA is provided through either the New Starts program or programs that are generally referred to as Formula Funds. The New Starts program is a nationally competitive program based on a project scoring system that is updated annually and requires significant reporting efforts by the Agency. It is generally used for new or significant extensions of rail or bus rapid transit projects including guideway, stations, vehicles, and facilities. Formula funds are allocated to the Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO) or other statewide agency such as the DOT for each region based on population, service and other variables. They are typically used for replacement of vehicles and facilities. The MPOs or other responsible agency administer a regional transportation planning process that determines which projects will be advanced into design and construction and how they will be funded.

Once a grant has been approved, the regional engineer will monitor project milestones and progress reports that the Agency submits through the TrAMS system. After a grant has been awarded, the Agency will draw down funds for reimbursement of project expenses using the FTA Electronic Clearing House Operation (ECHO) system.

FTA Circular C5010.1D provides detailed guidance on FTA’s grant management requirements.

Administrative Support

Administrative support involves providing the project office facilities and clerical/administrative staff. Wherever possible a project team works most effectively when the team members, including both Agency staff and their consultants, can be co-located in the same project office. Large projects can justify the cost of setting up a special project office for this purpose. An effective compromise for midsize and smaller projects, such as our example maintenance facility project, is to set aside workspace in the Agency’s office and require the project’s principal consultants to use this space when working on the project.
As the demands of a project change as the project moves through its phases, it is desirable to select administrative support staff who thrive on variety and are flexible to take on a range of administrative tasks where the workloads can vary from day to day.

**Procurement and Contract Administration**

The methods of solicitation and selection allowed within the federal contractual sphere are listed in Section VI of FTA C4220.1F. You may choose:

- Micro-purchases only for contract amounts less than $3,000
- Small purchase procedures only for contract amounts less than the simplified acquisition threshold (currently $100,000)
- Sealed bids where
  - You have a complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description.
  - Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete.
  - The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection can be made primarily based on price.
  - No discussion with bidders is needed after receipt of offers.
- Competitive proposals
- Noncompetitive proposals (sole source) procurement only if you can justify not soliciting additional competition in the manner explicitly defined in FTA C4420.1F Section 9.

State law usually restricts the method of procurement more tightly than these federal requirements.

**Professional Services**

**Contract Types**

To contract for professional services, you have two main methods:

a. Procurement by Competitive Proposal/Request for Proposals (RFP). The competitive proposal method of procurement is normally conducted with more than one offerer (e.g., design consultant, design manager). This method of procurement is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids.

Other types of services considered A&E services include program management, construction management, feasibility studies, project development, design, surveying, mapping, and services that require performance by a registered or licensed architect or engineer. This "qualifications based procurement method" must be used for the procurement of A&E services. These requirements apply except to the extent any state adopts or has adopted by statute a formal procedure for the procurement of A&E services. The Brooks Act requires a qualifications-based procurement method for the selection of A&E firms. Price is excluded as an evaluation factor, and negotiations are conducted with the most qualified firm only.

For further details regarding each selection method, you should refer to FTA C4220.1E Section VI, Procedural Guidance for Open Market Procurements.

**Contract Provisions**

When procuring for professional services, you will need to coordinate with your Agency’s contracting officer. When developing the contract provisions you and the contracting officer should review the mandatory clauses listed in FTA C4220.1F and Appendix D and determine the provisions that apply to the particular procurement. In addition, to receive federal funds, you will need to determine which of the federal statutes and regulations presented in Appendix A.1 of the FTA Best Practices Procurement Manual (BPPM) applies to the project. Finally, you will also need to make sure your Agency’s required terms and conditions (clauses, etc.) are included in the advertisement. This will allow the A&E firm to address these terms and conditions as part of the proposal. Any exceptions taken by the A&E firm to terms and conditions should be included in the price proposal only, as this recognizes that contract terms involve risk allocation and therefore cost.

**Procurement Process**

The procurement process for professional services is a multi-step process. The following are the key steps that occur in the process. For additional information, refer to Section 6.1 of the BPPM. (As FTA’s BPPM awaited update with respect to procurement at the date of this Handbook update, the Agency’s procurement manager and attorney are advised to review current requirements.)

- Name selection committee with specific expertise needed for performing the contract.
- Announce project in accordance with state law. The announcement should describe the project’s requirements, criteria to be used in the evaluation, and when and in what form the qualification statements are to be submitted.
- Determine short-list of qualified firms based on the submitted qualification statements. The short-list should be appropriate in size for adequate competition and should consist of those firms that have a reasonable chance of getting the award. You should check your state laws to determine if a minimum number of firms are required to be short-listed.
• Request technical proposals. If you determine to require detailed technical proposals after the short-list has been determined, you will need to establish the evaluation criteria to be used in selecting the successful contractor and to advise the firms of the criteria in your RFP. Criteria would normally involve past performance, technical criteria, and key personnel.

• Evaluate the technical proposals. The selection committee will review the submitted technical proposals within the criteria that were set forth in the RFP.

• Oral presentations by A&E firms. If the selection committee feels that oral presentations are needed, they should be scheduled with the short-listed firms. It is important that the actual project managers are being proposed by the short-listed firms assigned to the project.

• Final rank of firms. After the technical evaluation and oral presentations (if held), the selection committee will finalize the ranking of the firms.

• Once an agreement is reached on the highest qualified firm, that firm is then requested to submit a cost proposal for negotiation of a contract.

• Contract Negotiations - The Brooks Act requires a qualifications-based procurement method for the selection of A&E firms. Price is excluded as an evaluation factor, and negotiations are conducted with the most qualified firm only.

Construction Contracts
The traditional approach has been to have a detailed design completed for the entire project prior to soliciting bids from construction contractors. This is known as design/bid/build (D/B/B). This D/B/B approach requires that a detailed design package of the entire project be complete before bids are solicited from construction contractors. For the procurement of contractors, the most common method of procurement is Procurement by Sealed Bids/Invitation for Bid (IFB). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to all the material terms and conditions of the bids, is the lowest in price. These services must be procured in a manner that conforms to applicable state and local law, the requirements of FTA Circular 4220.1F relative to the method of procurement used, and all other applicable federal requirements.

Contract Provisions
Construction contracts require certain provisions that are unique to that activity. These provisions are discussed in detail Chapter 6 of the BPPM. Following is a summary of the special provisions and the BPPM sections where they are discussed.
• **Labor** – The three wage and hour laws governing federally assisted construction are the Davis-Bacon Act, the Contract Work-Hours and Safety Standards Act, and the Copeland Anti-Kickback Act.

• **Bonding** – Construction contracts require contractors to furnish three types of bonds—bid bonds, payment bonds, and performance bonds.

• **Liquidated damages** – Section 8.2.3 Liquidated Damages contains guidance on the use of liquidated damages clauses.

• **Differing site conditions** – Section 9.2.3.1 contains guidance on administering the Differing Site Conditions clause.

• **Specifications for construction** – Section 3.4 Specifications for Construction discusses requirements within FTA Circular 4220.1E and the Master Agreement that may affect your construction specifications.

• **Insurance** – Section 6.6 Insurance discusses an approach to insuring construction project contractors known as Owner Controlled Insurance Programs, which has proven to be an effective method of insuring the contractor teams involved in construction projects.

• **Warranties** – Obtaining acceptable warranty documents in a timely manner from contractors has been historically difficult. No contractual incentive has existed to motivate contractors to supply the required warranties. Agencies may wish to consider making the submission of an acceptable warranty form a condition of product or system acceptance in order to motivate contractors to furnish the required form. Agencies might also include the warranty forms as a fixed-price line item in the contract for payment purposes, thus giving the contractors a strong motivation to supply the required forms.

• **Contract closeout** – Closeout of construction contracts will require certain documentation unique to these contracts, such as lien waivers, as-built drawings, etc. These requirements are discussed in Section 10, Closeout.

When developing the contract provisions for sealed bid procurement, you along with the Agency’s contracting officer should review the mandatory procurement standards listed in Appendix D of FTA Circular 4220.1F and determine the provisions that apply to the particular procurement. In addition, to receive federal funds, you will need to determine which of the federal statutes and regulations presented in Appendix A.1 of the FTA BPPM applies to the sealed bid document.

**Procurement Process**

The procurement process for construction is a multi-step process. The following are the key steps that occur in the process. For additional information, refer to Chapter 6.1 of the BPPM.
• **Prepare notice** – Describe the project’s requirements completely, clearly, accurately, and unambiguously. The notice must also include all documents (whether actually attached or incorporated by reference) furnished to all prospective bidders for the purpose of bidding.

• **Publicize notice** – The notice must be publicly advertised and distributed to prospective bidders. The amount of time after publication and distribution of the notice to prepare and submit their bids and prior to the time and date set for opening of bids is important.

• **Received bids** – Sealed bids are submitted to you by bidders by the time and place stated in the invitation. Bids are publicly opened at the time and place described in the invitation.

• **Award contract** – A fixed price contract will be awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to the terms and conditions of the notice is the lowest in price.

### Equipment and Supplies

**Contract Types**

For the procurement of equipment, you will need to perform a lease versus purchase analysis to determine the most economical approach. The analysis should be appropriate to the size and complexity of the procurement. While it is usually more economical to purchase equipment than to lease it, this is not always true, however, especially when highly complex equipment is involved and there are issues of maintaining the equipment or having trained personnel who are competent to operate the equipment. The factors that must be considered when performing a lease versus purchase analysis are discussed in detail in the BPPM.

**Contract Provisions**

When developing procurements for equipment and supplies, you along with the contracting officer must be aware of local or state labor laws, as well as federal laws if construction is involved (e.g., Davis-Bacon Act), when developing the solicitation document and contract. In addition, the contract officer should carefully coordinate the insurance provisions with their insurance department or legal specialists. Requirements might include coverage for commercial general liability, auto vehicle insurance, workers compensation, and perhaps, a special railway protective policy. The Agency’s insurance specialists should determine specific coverage requirements and amounts.

**Third-Party (Utility) Agreements**

The development of a project typically requires you to perform coordination with utility companies regarding the relocation of utilities and associated reimbursement to the utility. Utilities are defined in 23 CFR, Part 645, Subpart B, Section 645.207 as a "privately, publicly, or cooperatively owned line, facility, or system for producing, transmitting, or distributing communications, cable television, power, electricity, light, heat, gas, oil, crude products, water, steam, waste, storm water not connected with highway drainage, or any other similar commodity, including any fire or police signal system or street lighting system, which directly or indirectly serves the public."
Be aware, too, that any contract or agreement involving utility work that uses any amount of Federal-aid highway program funding must comply with the Buy America requirements (23 U.S.C. 313). For additional information, check the Federal Highway Administration Construction Program Guide posted at the FHWA website.

Once the preliminary initial utility alignments have been identified, you should determine what type of property right allows the utility to occupy its location (e.g., license, franchise, easement, or deed). This determination will affect who is responsible for relocation costs. Next, initiate discussions with the utility regarding the development of the utility agreement. The scope of the utility relocation must be determined as well as the responsibility for costs of the relocation. As part of this discussion, determine:

- The utility’s policy for relocating its own utilities or if it wants the relocation performed under the relocation activities of the project.
- Who is responsible for the relocation costs? Only actual allowable, allocable, and reasonable costs are reimbursable. If costs are to be covered by the Agency, determine what these costs are up front, and begin negotiations. The costs of the relocation are not always borne by the Agency. Cost sharing must always be considered as a feasible alternative.
- If a utility elects to improve, change, rearrange, or otherwise enhance its facilities beyond that which currently exists, you should obtain separate estimates to identify the cost difference between the improved adjustment and the adjustment that is comparable to the existing facility.

The ideal situation is to have signed agreements and all utilities relocated prior to the GC receiving a notice-to-proceed on the main project. If this is not possible, all affected utility facilities need to be shown in the project documents and relocation will be made concurrent with the construction activities. Coordinating the availability of the project site with the project’s GC and the utility will be very important. Once the utility agreement is in place, you will need to oversee or perform the following as part of administering the utility agreement:

- Conduct a utility pre-construction meeting.
- Monitor the relocation work.
- Provide oversight of progress. Any slip in the schedule of the utility relocation will have an effect on main construction project’s schedule.
- Inspect the utility relocations to ensure that all work is performed according to the Agency’s expectations.
Buy America Audit Requirements

Prior to awarding a federally funded procurement contract for revenue service rolling stock, Buy America regulations require the sponsor to conduct a Pre-Award audit verifying the manufacturer’s compliance.

Prior to transfer of title for revenue service vehicles, Buy America regulations require the sponsor to conduct a Post-Delivery audit verifying the manufacturer’s compliance.

Requirements for Pre-Award and Post-Delivery audits are stipulated in 49 CFR 663, and additional guidance is provided on FTA’s website.

DBE Requirements

Any third-party contract that you award, funded in whole or in part with DOT funds is subject to the DBE regulations in 49 CFR Part 26. It does not matter whether the federal funds are for planning, capital, or operating assistance, the DBE rules apply.

Under these regulations, you have an obligation to ensure that DBEs have the opportunity to compete for contracts and perform work on Agency projects. The project manager should communicate with the DBE community to make certain that they are informed on project contracting opportunities. You should refer to Agency records of DBE firms interested in performing project work as subcontractors and make this available to principal professional service and contracting firms competing for project contracts.

However, not every procurement or contract must be reviewed for DBE participation. The rules have flexibility regarding how and when to establish individual contract goals. Certain types of procurements (e.g., off-the-shelf commodities) may not have subcontracting opportunities or be appropriate for DBE goal setting.

While the U.S. DOT has a national percentage goal for DBE utilization, this goal does not apply to individual Agencies or their contractors. Agencies are to set goals based on what will achieve a level playing field for DBEs in their own programs, without regard to the national DOT goal.

It should also be noted that a contract that is funded entirely with local funds, without any federal funds, is not subject to the DBE requirements under this rule.
Project Communications

In accordance to the Project Management Plan, the project manager or delegated personnel should prepare a communication plan for the project that addresses the following:

Community Relations

Most transit-related projects have an impact on the community. The project manager should inform the general public, business groups, and civic associations as to the goals, facts, and progress of the project. The Agency through the project manager should encourage community input and comments during the project design and adhere to any local, state, or federal comment period regulations that apply to the project.

You should pay special attention to making certain that the residents, businesses, and general public in the vicinity of project construction are kept informed of the status of construction and its possible impact on the community. To assist in this effort on larger projects it is beneficial to open a local storefront office conveniently accessible to the community, hold community meetings, and visit local schools.

Media Communications

Project managers should be accessible and responsive to media requests for information and comment. However, communication with the media needs to be coordinated by and channeled through the Agency’s media communications personnel. The project manager should make certain that project staff, consultants, and contractors do not contact or respond to the media unless requested to do so by the Agency’s communications personnel. Contacts by the media to project personnel, consultants, or contractors should be immediately referred to the Agency communications personnel.

All contacts with the media should be viewed as opportunities to get the Agency’s message out on the status of the project through briefings and press releases covering project facts, events, and progress of interest to the media. Special events are a particularly good time for messages to the media, e.g., ceremonies to mark groundbreaking, significant project achievements, dedication ceremonies upon the completion of project facilities, tours of the project, and local community events.
Government Relations
The most important principle the project manager needs to remember with respect to government relations is “no surprises.” Whatever developments take place on the project, good or bad, it is critical that you make certain that the government stakeholders are kept informed and do not learn of events from other sources, particularly the media. You should make full use of your Agency’s government relations staff to help you keep government stakeholders fully informed. To do this you need to keep the government relations staff informed on project issues and status, and give priority to responding to requests from government relations staff on project issues.

Project Team Communications
Internal project team communications are essential to project team building and maintaining effective ongoing working relationships. The project manager should hold regular general team meetings to discuss the project status as well as focused technical meetings on design, construction, and project control issues. Although it is unreasonable for everyone to be kept informed about everything, you should take care to avoid unnecessarily limiting access to project information amongst the team as this can create mistrust and distracting speculation.

Records Management
Document Control
You should pay special attention to making certain that the residents, businesses, and general public in the vicinity of project construction are kept informed of the status of construction and its possible impact on the community. To assist in this effort on larger projects it is beneficial to open a local store front office conveniently accessible to the community, hold community meetings, and visit local schools.

The project manager should make certain that the project’s document control process identifies who on the project management team has the authority and accountability for ensuring that each of the baseline documents is kept current in compliance with the project’s configuration management and document control procedures. Figure 9-5 shows the types of baseline documents for a typical engineering/construction project such as our example maintenance facility project.
### Records Distribution, Storage, and Retrieval

Records management controls the distribution, storage, and retrieval of project records in both hard copy and electronic form. The project manager should ensure that incoming and outgoing correspondence and documents are transmitted through the project’s records management specialist, who can use records database software to computer index the records. Working copies of records can be retrieved by records management for use by project staff. Records management should securely store original copies and ultimately dispose of the records according to the Agency’s and the project’s records retention schedule.

The project manager should not allow project staff to keep their own files of original project documents or correspondence. Records management should maintain the project’s active and historical records and files in order to provide efficient access and complete audit trails of the current status and record of revisions to the project design and baseline documentation and associated correspondence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Document</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management and Control</td>
<td>Project Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Budget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Master Schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Financial Plan (Funding &amp; Cash Flow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Policies and Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td>Quality Assurance/Quality Control Program Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety and Security</td>
<td>Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design</td>
<td>Functional Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Standards and Criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Technical Reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contract Unit Descriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contracts</td>
<td>Instructions to Bidders and Bid Forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master Contract General Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contract Drawings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contract Specifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contract Terms and Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Resident Engineer’s Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations and Maintenance</td>
<td>Facility Operating Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communications</td>
<td>Community Awareness Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Project Status Reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configuration and Records Management Plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Records management’s correspondence control system should provide convenient access to records and make certain the records are secure and the appropriate level of confidentiality maintained. The system should be set up to comply with the Agency’s administrative, legal, and historical record requirements and provide an audit trail and documentation of project activities.

Records management can also be used to establish an accessible project library of technical documents, standards, baseline documents, industry codes and standards, studies, and other general information pertaining to the project.

Records management should develop a records storage program that identifies and protects project documentation critical to project completion and the ongoing operation of the completed project. The vital records storage program needs a procedure for archiving critical documents and their disaster protection.

Where to Find Additional Help and Resources

Additional help and resources can be found in Section 10 of this Handbook. This section include a nationwide listing of the FTA offices, along with listings of helpful resource documents.
Appendices

Appendix A: FTA Office Locations

FTA HEADQUARTERS
Federal Transit Administration
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE East Building, 4th and 5th Floors
Washington, DC 20590
Office of Communications and Congressional Affairs Telephone:
(202) 366-4043

REGION 1
Transportation Systems Center
Kendall Square
55 Broadway, Suite 920
Cambridge, MA 02142-1093
Telephone: (617) 494-2055
Fax: (617) 494-2865
Areas served: Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire,
Rhode Island, and Vermont

REGION 2
One Bowling Green
Room 429
New York, NY 10004-1415
Telephone: (212) 668-2170
Fax: (212) 668-2136
Areas served: New Jersey, New York, and U.S. Virgin Islands

REGION 3
1760 Market Street
Suite 500
Philadelphia, PA 19103-4124
Telephone: (215) 656-7100
Fax: (215) 656-7260
Areas served: Delaware, District of Columbia, Maryland, Pennsylvania,
Virginia, and West Virginia

REGION 4
230 Peachtree, NW
Suite 800
Atlanta, GA 30303
Telephone: (404) 865-5600
Fax: (404) 865-5605
Areas served: Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Mississippi, North
Carolina, Puerto Rico, South Carolina, Tennessee, and U.S. Virgin Islands
REGION 5
200 West Adams Street
Suite 320
Chicago, IL 60606
Telephone: (312) 353-2789
Fax: (312) 886-0351
Areas served: Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Minnesota, Ohio, and Wisconsin

REGION 6
819 Taylor Street
Room 8A36
Fort Worth, TX 76102
Telephone: (817) 978-0550
Fax: (817) 978-0575
Areas served: Arkansas, Louisiana, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas

REGION 7
901 Locust Street
Suite 404
Kansas City, MO 64106
Telephone: (816) 329-3920
Fax: (816) 329-3921
Areas served: Iowa, Kansas, Missouri, and Nebraska

REGION 8
Byron Rogers Federal Building
1961 Stout Street, Suite 13301
Denver, CO 80909
Telephone: (303) 362-2400
Areas served: Colorado, Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, Utah, and Wyoming

REGION 9
San Francisco Federal Building
90 7th Street, Suite 15-300
San Francisco, CA 94103
Telephone: (202) 731-9652
Areas served: American Samoa, Arizona, California, Guam, Hawaii, Nevada, and the Northern Mariana Islands

REGION 10
Jackson Federal Building
915 Second Avenue, Suite 3142
Seattle, WA 98174-1002
Telephone: (206) 220-7954
Fax: (206) 220-7959
Areas served: Alaska, Idaho, Oregon, and Washington
Metropolitan Offices/Lower Manhattan Recovery Office

New York Metropolitan Office
One Bowling Green, Room 428
New York, NY 10004-1415
Telephone: (212) 668-2201
Fax: (212) 668-2136
Area served: New York Metropolitan Area

Lower Manhattan Recovery Office
One Bowling Green, Room 436
New York, NY 10004-1415
Telephone: (212) 668-1770
Fax: (212) 668-2505
Area served: Lower Manhattan Recovery Area

Philadelphia Metropolitan Office
1760 Market Street, Suite 510
Philadelphia, PA 19103-4124
Telephone: (215) 656-7070
Fax: (215) 656-7269
Area served: Philadelphia Metropolitan Area

Chicago Metropolitan Office
200 West Adams Street Suite 2410 (24th floor) Chicago, IL 60606
Telephone: (312) 886-1616
Fax: (312) 886-0351
Area served: Chicago Metropolitan Area

Los Angeles Metropolitan Office
888 S. Figueroa, Suite 2170
Los Angeles, CA 90012
Telephone: (213) 202-3950
Fax: (213) 202-3961
Area served: Los Angeles Metropolitan Area

Washington, D.C. Metropolitan Office
1990 K Street, NW
Suite 510
Washington, D.C. 20006
Telephone: (202) 219-3562/219-3565
Fax: (202) 219-3545
Area served: Washington, D.C. Metropolitan Area
Appendix B: Checklist – Readiness to Enter Engineering

Even before entry into the Engineering phase, a project must have sufficient design detail to be considered for a FTA Capital Investment Grant program. The checklist below (drawn from FTA draft guidance of September 2015) lists FTA review criteria used to determine project readiness for entry into Engineering.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.0 PROJECT DEFINITION</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 System Definition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 Alignment Definition</td>
<td>General alignment is defined to include the approximate horizontal and vertical alignment, approximate station locations, and length. The alignment should be developed beyond the definition contained in the LPA to describe all structures necessary for the project. Minor alternative alignments may be evaluated within the corridor, as required, to the degree they are within the LPA definition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 Configuration Management Plan</td>
<td>Configuration Management should document the process of managing the physical configurations and their supporting processes through documents, records and data. Configuration Management should demonstrate a process that accommodates changes and continually documents how a physical system is configured, ensuring that documents, records, and data remain concise and valid.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3 Station requirements</td>
<td>Station design characteristics including station locations and station sizing. Should identify platform lengths and support spaces for mechanical/electrical equipment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.2 Environmental Constraints</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 NEPA</td>
<td>NEPA requirements for entry into Engineering include preparation of an EIS where effects from a proposed project are significant or a Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) and accompanying environmental assessment (EA) where effects are less than significant. For an EIS, FTA approves the preferred project through issuance of a Record of Decision (ROD). The ROD describes the scope of the projected and committed mitigations to reduce the effects of identified impacts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2 Third party requirements</td>
<td>(1) Evaluate third-party agreement processes and current status of agreements. Where agreements are not available, Project Sponsor should provide an outline or term sheet(s). When even this information is not available, the needed agreement shall be identified and the issues and any obstacles to executing the agreements noted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Types of agreements and information to be reviewed include, but are not limited to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ utility relocation agreements (public-water, sewer, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ intergovernmental agreements (IGA) with local entities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ agreements with railroad companies (design, construction, operating)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ third-party franchise agreements (gas, telephone, cable TV, other communications, power);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ universities, colleges, other educational institutions agreements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ public/private funding arrangements (including transit-oriented development - TOD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Master permitting plan and schedule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>The framework and content of these agreements must conform to the needs of the project. Agreements should be negotiated and completed to the extent possible prior to start of Engineering Phase; where incomplete, a defined process for achieving completion is in place.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.3</td>
<td>Geotechnical Baseline</td>
<td>Geotechnical baseline report prepared for projects involving tunnels or other underground structures, or where specific structures (e.g., major bridges, retaining walls, levees, or other facilities) will be located on material with questionable or unknown load bearing capacity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>PROJECT MANAGEMENT PLAN</td>
<td>Note: Some of the items listed are repeated below where additional review guidance is provided. (1) FTA’s regulations are found in 49 CFR 633.25, which requires a Project Management Plan to contain at a minimum the following: (a) A description of adequate recipient staff organization, complete with well-defined reporting relationships, statements of functional responsibilities, job descriptions, and job qualifications; (b) A budget covering the project management organization, appropriate consultants, property acquisition, utility relocation, systems demonstration staff, audits, and such miscellaneous costs as the recipient may be prepared to justify (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning); (c) A construction schedule (Note: schedule should address entire project from design through revenue operations); (d) A document control procedure and recordkeeping system; (e) A change order procedure which includes a documented, systematic approach to the handling of construction change orders (Note: should also address change orders for all procurements); (f) A description of organizational structures, management skills, and staffing levels required throughout the construction phase (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning); (g) Quality control and quality assurance programs which define functions, procedures, and responsibilities for construction and for system installation and integration of system components (Note: QA/QC program should also address design, procurement, and start-up/commissioning); (h) Material testing policies and procedures; (i) Plan for internal reporting requirements including cost and schedule control procedures; and (j) Criteria and procedures to be used for testing the operational system or its major components;”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Basis of project documented</td>
<td>Note: Some of the items listed are repeated below where additional review guidance is provided. (1) FTA’s regulations are found in 49 CFR 633.25, which requires a Project Management Plan to contain at a minimum the following: (a) A description of adequate recipient staff organization, complete with well-defined reporting relationships, statements of functional responsibilities, job descriptions, and job qualifications; (b) A budget covering the project management organization, appropriate consultants, property acquisition, utility relocation, systems demonstration staff, audits, and such miscellaneous costs as the recipient may be prepared to justify (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning); (c) A construction schedule (Note: schedule should address entire project from design through revenue operations); (d) A document control procedure and recordkeeping system; (e) A change order procedure which includes a documented, systematic approach to the handling of construction change orders (Note: should also address change orders for all procurements); (f) A description of organizational structures, management skills, and staffing levels required throughout the construction phase (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning); (g) Quality control and quality assurance programs which define functions, procedures, and responsibilities for construction and for system installation and integration of system components (Note: QA/QC program should also address design, procurement, and start-up/commissioning); (h) Material testing policies and procedures; (i) Plan for internal reporting requirements including cost and schedule control procedures; and (j) Criteria and procedures to be used for testing the operational system or its major components;”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Legal authority for project</td>
<td>(2) The FTA or its PMOC may recommend a workshop be held to help establish roles and responsibilities and define baseline standards of performance related to the management of the project. Few, if any, Project Sponsors have all the capabilities or authorities to plan, design, and implement a major capital project by themselves. Bringing Project Sponsor staff, consultants, and relevant third parties together in a workshop early in the project life can help to shape the project management approach. Through workshop discussions, all parties can gain a better understanding of each other’s requirements, responsibilities, and authorities as related to the project. The PMOC will review and summarize its findings and opinions and present recommendations with respect to the adequacy and soundness of the Project Sponsor’s plans and procedures, and the successful implementation of such plans and procedures for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• NEPA coordination – The Project Sponsor’s plan for managing and implementing mitigation actions should be in place and environmental mitigation work should be incorporated into the design documents, cost estimates, and schedules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|      |             | **Design control.** The Project Sponsor should implement appropriate plans and procedures for design control in all aspects. These plans and procedures should illustrate:  
|      |             | • consistency with design criteria;  
|      |             | • coordination and change control among design disciplines for drawings and specifications;  
|      |             | • completeness of soils testing and site surveys;  
|      |             | • coordination with third parties; and  
|      |             | • completeness of project documents for bidding.  |
| (4)  |             | The Project Management Plan should provide for implementation of project controls in all aspects including procedures for cost and schedule control, risk management, and dispute or conflict resolution during construction. The PMP should include procedures on cost sharing. Risk and contingency management policies and procedures should be in place and routinely used.  |
| (5)  |             | The PMP should confirm implementation of plans and procedures for project delivery and procurement. Specifically, it should focus on the schedule for bidding construction packages and procuring equipment and vehicles.  |
| (6)  |             | Labor Relations and Policies should be in development.  |
| (7)  |             | Development should be underway for plans and procedures regarding construction administration, construction management, construction inspection, coordinating construction work by third parties, site logistics, and construction change order and shop drawing document flow and authorities.  |
| (8)  |             | Development of Start-up and Revenue Operations should be underway to establish plans and procedures regarding testing/commissioning, closeout of construction contracts, and training of staff.  |
| (9)  |             | PMP Subplans should include the Quality Assurance / Quality Control Plan, Safety and Security Management Plan, Real Estate Acquisition Management Plan, and Bus and Rail Fleet Management Plans.  |
| 2.2  | Environmental mitigation/assessment documented | (1) Description of Mitigation Principles  
|      |             | (2) Plan for Management and Implementation of Mitigation Actions  |
| 2.3  | Design Procurement and Control Plan | (1) Design contracting plan for the Engineering Phase  
|      |             | (2) Description of relationship between forecast ridership, operating plan and proposed project transit capacity in guideways, stations, support facilities  
|      |             | (3) Design Criteria for each discipline  
|      |             | (4) Schedule for the development of contract documents (level of development expected at each milestone for design/construction drawings, specifications, general and supplementary conditions of contracts for construction, and the Division 1)  
|      |             | (5) Plan/procedures for Design Drawings and Specifications  
|      |             | (6) Procedures for Design Change and Configuration Control of documents during Design and Construction  
|      |             | (7) Plan (List and schedule) for third party agreements and permits including utilities, real estate, railroads, transit-oriented development/joint development, etc.  
|      |             | (8) Investigation and Testing Plan (List and schedule) for site surveys, geotechnical and materials investigation before/during design.  |
| 2.4  | Project Controls | (1) Document and Records Controls  
|      |             | (2) Internal reporting procedures  
<p>|      |             | (3) Cost Control Procedures  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 2.5  | Project construction delivery and procurement plan | (1) Procedures for Procurement  
(2) Procurement Plan and Schedule  
(3) Contracting Strategy for Transit-Oriented Development and Joint Development, if applicable  
(4) Identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) Opportunities, Federal DBE, State/Local WBE & MBE, Plans and Goals  
(5) Negotiating and Approving Change Orders and Claims  
(6) Procedures for claims avoidance |
| 2.6  | Labor relations and Policies | (1) Wage Rates and Classifications  
(2) Wage and Hour Requirements  
(3) State and Local Regulations |
| 2.7  | Construction Procedures for Fixed Infrastructure | (1) Construction Contract Administration  
(2) Construction Management  
(3) Construction Inspection  
(4) Coordination with Third Parties  
(5) Site Logistics Plan (materials transport and storage; temporary site facilities; maintenance of existing pedestrian ways, transit and traffic operations during construction; protection of existing utilities)  
(6) Processing Shop Drawings, Bulletins, and RFIs  
(7) Substantial Completion; Final Completion |
| 2.8  | Start up and Revenue Operations | (1) Testing plan elements are identified and would be expanded at a later date  
(2) Closeout materials (warranties, testing results, O&M manuals, spare parts, etc.) to be identified to provide direction to the Engineer  
(3) Plan for Training of Staff to be developed later |
| 2.9  | QA/QC Plan | At entry to Engineering, the QAP shall fully address all elements governing project activities through the design phase. It should also contain, at least in outline form and to the level of detail possible, information relative to the upcoming construction phase. The PMOC shall also confirm that the Project Sponsor has exhibited both a Quality Assurance and Quality Control review of its PD package. |
| 2.10 | Safety and Security Management Plan | In place and is in compliance with FTA guidance as provided in Circular C5800.1. Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA) and Threat and Vulnerability Assessment (TVA) are complete. Safety and Security Design Criteria development is underway. |
| 2.11 | Real estate Acquisition and Relocation Plan | (1) Conforms with and is expressly incorporated within the Design Drawings, Master Schedule and budget for all phases and types of work planned or anticipated. Further, the RAMP must meet all federal requirements. The Project Sponsor is to provide a complete list of all parcels with title searches on all properties to be acquired and RAMP procedures.  
(2) Preparation of a relocation plan to include interviews with potential displacees which stresses that displacees are not to move until project plans have been finalized.  
(3) Project Sponsor shall exhibit management capacity and capabilities to implement the real estate acquisition and relocation process, including organization structure and staffing plan and any consultant agreements undertaken. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.12</td>
<td>Rail and Bus Fleet Management</td>
<td>Plan demonstrates consistency with the project scope, NEPA documents, and the project’s Operations Plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>Before and After Study Documentation</td>
<td>Plan submitted in accordance with FTA guidance; verify that the plan has preserved the project scope and capital cost information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.0 MANAGEMENT CAPACITY AND CAPABILITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Organizational charts</td>
<td>Project organization charts show the complete organization, covering all project functions and all project personnel, regardless of affiliation. Staffing levels should be indicated. Charts should be time-oriented to show different organizational arrangements for different phases of the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Staff qualifications / Experience chart</td>
<td>Key personnel in all organizations should be identified and their principal duties, reporting relationships, job descriptions, job qualifications, and assigned responsibility and delegated authority should be defined. The size, qualifications, and availability of new and existing staff resources must be considered in relation to the human resource requirements and duration of the project. A responsibility matrix should be developed that identifies critical management activities and demonstrates the staff’s ability to satisfy these requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Staffing plan</td>
<td>Staffing levels should be indicated. Charts should be time-oriented to show different organizational arrangements for different phases of the project. The organization chart should be supplemented with a tabular staffing plan that shows percent utilization, mobilization start date, and release date (where applicable) information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Engineering/Design Consultants</td>
<td>During construction planning, careful examination of the existing labor situation has determined the impacts of DBE participation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Agency-level processes and procedures</td>
<td>Should include project management policies and procedures and an adequate staff of professionals skilled in but not limited to, project controls, QA/QC, cost estimation, scheduling, procurement, change control, risk management, transit operations, and public participation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3.6  | Resumes of project team members | Resumes should be provided for both agency and consultant key staff. Resumes must demonstrate experience and ability to manage each of the following key project areas:  
- Project management  
- Environmental assessment and mitigation leads  
- Operations planning, Fleet management lead  
- Design team leads  
- Quality assurance and Quality control lead  
- Project controls leads  
- Construction, permits, testing, start-up leads  
- Real estate lead  
- Safety review lead |

### 4.0 SCOPE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 4.1  | Scope Development | (1) Definition of the project (i.e., scope) contained in the project ROD/FONSI and most recent New Starts submittal agree with the scope as developed in Project Development materials, including the approved PMP and the engineering design plans and specifications. Discrepancies or unclear scope items in the plans should be noted.  
(2) Basic quantities, such as number and locations of facilities, peak and total vehicles, etc., identified in the... |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>environmental document and ROD/FONSI are the same as assumed in the current project definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) The current project design satisfies the capacity and operational objectives established in the approved environmental document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Mitigations committed to in the ROD (or project mitigation plans), when involving a physical or operational feature of the project, are incorporated - or in the process of being incorporated - into the engineering design, proposed construction program, and/or other implementation plans. Mitigations could include changes in design, use of different types of material, modified traffic control, restricted construction activities, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Results of the hazard and threat and vulnerability analyses are incorporated in the design criteria and the scope of work.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2 Design Package

A Basis of Design Report is required which presents the following content:

(1) Project Sponsor accepted design standards and performance objectives including consistency with the required transit capacity.

(2) Design, construction, system and vehicle interfaces are well known and defined. Vehicle dynamic clearance and structure clearance diagrams are prepared.

(3) Design Reports, Concept of Operations Report, and configuration studies are adequate and complete.

(4) Design packages and contract packages are defined and delineated.

(5) The documents possess a level of definition, clarity, presentation and cross-referencing consistent with the scope definitions in following sections.

(6) The project is constructible. Adequate construction access and staging areas are identified.

4.3 Project Delivery Method Plan

Procedures for Procurement (advertising, bidding, awarding of contracts for consultants and construction contractors, procurement for equipment, etc.) are established including: Procurement Plan and Schedule (indicate project phase, durations for RFP, screening, interviews, selection, board approvals, etc.); Contracting Strategy for Transit-oriented and Joint Development; and identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) Opportunities and Federal DBE and State/Local WBE & MBE Plans and Goals.

4.4 Constructability

Project Sponsor’s construction planning of the project has sufficiently and adequately addressed the constructability of the project. An in-depth constructability review is required of the Project Sponsor. It is a critical tool for synthesizing the preliminary design work.

4.5 Site and Geotechnical Conditions

(1) Digitized aerial photogrammetry (aerial photo background; planimetric and topographic mapping) is complete.

(2) Photo simulations and/or schematic renderings are available for stations, samples of the alignment, and unique features of the line.

(3) Preliminary geotechnical investigations are complete including a subsurface exploration or laboratory testing program. Requirements for additional geotechnical investigations have been defined and identification of buried structures and utilities and identification of contaminated soils and other hazardous materials are complete.

4.6 SCC 10 Guideway

(1) Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including location and extent of elevated or underground structures, rehabilitation or reuse of any existing infrastructure, structures, facilities, or systems.

(2) The choice of track or roadway design has been made for the line. Grade crossing construction is defined and clearances established for operations, maintenance, and emergency evacuation. Guideway drainage has been defined. Emergency evacuation. Guideway drainage has been defined.
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>Major or critical work details, structural element dimensions, design interfaces, and physical interfaces have been identified and are defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>Structural systems are established. Aerial guideway is dimensioned to show number of spans, span length, substructure design, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>Preliminary mass balance diagrams have been developed for vertical alignments on fill or cut supported by topographic surveys and soil investigations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>Retaining walls and fills are located and dimensioned and defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>Tunnels, both cut-and-cover and mined, are defined in terms of access and egress, construction access and laydown, openings for stations, passage chambers, ventilation or emergency access shafts or adits, sections, and profiles to depict and dimension major tunnel features. Tunnel design and dimensions have been cross checked to adjacent building foundations and coordinated with the vehicle’s dynamic envelope, walkways and egress, tunnel lighting, and systems elements such as ventilation, communications, and traction power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>Trackwork is advanced to a level where single line schematics of the track layout, plan and profile drawings, dimensioned layouts of turnouts and crossovers, and tabulations of track geometry (horizontal and vertical curve data) have been defined. The alignment of any tunnel structure is referenced to the center line of track and base of rail. Guideway sections, inclusive of aerial, tunnel and station cross sections, consistently show the distance from centerline of track to critical clearance points such as walls, walkways, and edges of platforms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>Special trackwork is located and adequately defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>Where used, the contact rail system is specified with typical details and required clearances provided. End ramps and anchors are located. Gaps are coordinated with the traction power supply system. Feeder and return conductor attachment are specified and typical details provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11)</td>
<td>The need for special track construction for noise or vibration control is identified with locations and preliminary dimensions and a preliminary choice is made for the noise and vibration control design.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.7 SCC 20 Stations, Stops, and Terminals

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including rehabilitation or reuse of any existing structures, facilities or systems. Major or critical operational fire/life safety, and security requirements have been defined. Interfaces with other transit facilities or structures are identified and passenger and public circulation concepts defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>Station architecture is established. The drawing package consists of site plans and, for station buildings, floor plans, elevations, longitudinal and cross sections, and details illustrating typical and special architectural conditions. The finish concept should be clearly described. The location and outline of fare gates and barriers should be shown. The location of ticket vending machines, electronic passenger information displays, security systems and other platform amenities should be shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the building to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as is provision for pedestrians and bicycles to access the public way from the building. Provision for motorized vehicles is also shown. Access to the platforms and buildings and within the buildings complies with ADA. Any parking lots or structures are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>Building sections and elevations illustrate the relationship of the station to grade (below, on-grade, elevated structure); the building structural system has been chosen and preliminary dimensions established for clearances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>Station building floor plans show vertical circulation systems including stairs, elevators, escalators, and support spaces for mechanical, plumbing, electrical, and communications systems. The floor plans should show the agent area, fare gate area, retail areas, and any crew or public facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>Level boarding between the transit vehicle and the boarding platform complies with ADA. Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shows passenger level boarding design for all stations and/or satisfactory determination of infeasibility for one or more stations along with a satisfactory alternative plan for accessibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preliminary identification of arts-in-transit integrated into station design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Electrical systems should include a single line drawing including the source and distribution of power. Mechanical and electrical systems, including area drainage, piped utilities, heating ventilation and air conditioning, smoke evacuation, power, and lighting, are described and single line drawings are provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design interfaces among disciplines are defined on drawings, in standards, design criteria, specifications and contract package scopes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parking structure design is progressed to a level consistent with station buildings as described above including vertical transportation and interface with the station buildings. Parking design is consistent with Record of Decision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>SCC 30 Support Facilities: Yards, Shops, Administration Buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including rehabilitation, reuse or expansion of any existing structures, facilities or systems. Major or critical operational fire/life safety, and security requirements have been defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An architectural space program has been prepared for all occupied buildings including for modifications to existing buildings such as Control Centers. The support facility drawings are consistent with the architectural program. Adequate employee parking is provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Based on the vehicles chosen and utilization as set out in the fleet management plans, a review has been done to determine the number of vehicle spots and facilities (jacks, wheel truing, etc.) required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A preliminary industrial engineering evaluation has been prepared for all workspaces in shops</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix C: Checklist – Readiness to Execute SSGA/FFGA

To be considered for the FTA Capital Investment Grant program, a project should have sufficient design detail. The checklist below (drawn from FTA draft guidance of September 2015) lists FTA review criteria used to determine project readiness for execution of a Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA) or Small Starts Grant Agreement (SSGA).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>PROJECT DEFINITION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>System Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1</td>
<td>Alignment Definition</td>
<td>Alignment is defined to include the horizontal and vertical alignment, station locations, and length. The alignment should be developed beyond the definition contained in the NEPA documents to describe all structures necessary for the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2</td>
<td>Configuration Management Plan</td>
<td>Configuration Management should document the process of managing the physical configurations and their supporting processes through documents, records and data. Configuration Management should demonstrate a process that accommodates changes and continually documents how a physical system is configured, ensuring that documents, records, and data remain concise and valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3</td>
<td>Station requirements</td>
<td>Station design characteristics including station locations and station sizing. Should identify platform lengths and support spaces for mechanical/electrical equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Environmental Constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1</td>
<td>NEPA</td>
<td>NEPA requirements include preparation of an EIS where effects from a proposed project are significant or a Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) and accompanying environmental assessment (EA) where effects are less than significant. For an EIS, FTA approves the preferred project through issuance of a Record of Decision (ROD). The ROD describes the scope of the projected and committed mitigations to reduce the effects of identified impacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2</td>
<td>Third party requirements</td>
<td>(1) Evaluate third-party agreement processes and current status of agreements. Note that all signed third party agreements are required prior to a FFGA/SSGA, unless there is a specific agreement between the FTA and the Project Sponsor that execution of certain agreements may occur after FFGA/SSGA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Types of agreements and information to be reviewed include, but are not limited to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- utility relocation agreements (public-water, sewer, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- intergovernmental agreements (IGA) with local entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- agreements with railroad companies (design, construction, operating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- third-party franchise agreements (gas, telephone, cable TV, other communications, power);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- universities, colleges, other educational institutions agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- public/private funding arrangements (including transit-oriented development - TOD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Master permitting plan and schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) The framework and content of these agreements must conform to the needs of the project. Note that all signed third party agreements are required prior to an FFGA/SSGA, unless there is a specific agreement between the FTA and the Project Sponsor that execution of certain agreements may occur after FFGA/SSGA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.3</td>
<td>Geotechnical Baseline</td>
<td>Geotechnical baseline report prepared for projects involving tunnels or other underground structures, or where specific structures (e.g., major bridges, retaining walls, levees, or other facilities) will be located on material with questionable or unknown load bearing capacity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.0 PROJECT MANAGEMENT PLAN

#### 2.1 Basis of project documented

*Note: Some of the items listed are repeated below where additional review guidance is provided.*

1. FTA's regulations are found in 49 CFR 633.25, which requires a Project Management Plan to contain at a minimum the following:
   - (a) A description of adequate recipient staff organization, complete with well-defined reporting relationships, statements of functional responsibilities, job descriptions, and job qualifications;
   - (b) A budget covering the project management organization, appropriate consultants, property acquisition, utility relocation, systems demonstration staff, audits, and such miscellaneous costs as the recipient may be prepared to justify (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning);
   - (c) A construction schedule (Note: schedule should address entire project from design through revenue operations);
   - (d) A document control procedure and recordkeeping system;
   - (e) A change order procedure which includes a documented, systematic approach to the handling of construction change orders (Note: should also address change orders for all procurements);
   - (f) A description of organizational structures, management skills, and staffing levels required throughout the construction phase (Note: budget should also address design, construction, and start-up/commissioning);
   - (g) Quality control and quality assurance programs which define functions, procedures, and responsibilities for construction and for system installation and integration of system components (Note: QA/QC program should also address design, procurement, and start-up/commissioning);
   - (h) Material testing policies and procedures;
   - (i) Plan for internal reporting requirements including cost and schedule control procedures; and
   - (j) Criteria and procedures to be used for testing the operational system or its major components;”

2. Legal authority for project

   (2) The PMOC will review and summarize its findings and opinions and present recommendations with respect to the adequacy and soundness of the Project Sponsor’s plans and procedures, and the successful implementation of such plans and procedures for NEPA coordination – The Project Sponsor’s plan for managing and implementing mitigation actions should be in place and environmental mitigation work should be incorporated into the design/contract documents, cost estimates, and schedules.

   (3) Design control. The Project Sponsor should implement appropriate plans and procedures for design control in all aspects. These plans and procedures should illustrate:
   - (a) consistency with design criteria;
   - (b) coordination and change control among design disciplines for drawings and specifications;
   - (c) completeness of soils testing and site surveys;
   - (4) coordination with third parties; and completeness of project documents for bidding.

4. The Project Management Plan should provide for implementation of project controls in all aspects including procedures for cost and schedule control, risk management, and dispute or conflict resolution during construction. The PMP should include procedures on cost sharing. Risk and contingency management policies and procedures should be in place and routinely used.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Environmental mitigation/assessment documented</td>
<td>(5) The PMP should confirm implementation of plans and procedures for project delivery and procurement. Specifically, it should focus on the schedule for bidding construction packages and procuring equipment and vehicles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Labor Relations and Policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(7) Plans and procedures regarding construction administration, construction management, construction inspection, coordinating construction work by third parties, site logistics, and construction change order and shop drawing document flow and authorities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(8) Development of Start-up and Revenue Operations should be underway to establish plans and procedures regarding testing/commissioning, closeout of construction contracts, and training of staff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Design Procurement and Control Plan</td>
<td>(1) Description of Mitigation Principles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Plan for Management and Implementation of Mitigation Actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Design Criteria for each discipline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Schedule for the development of contract documents (level of development expected at each milestone for design/construction drawings, specifications, general and supplementary conditions of contracts for construction, and the Division 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Plan / procedures for Design Drawings and Specifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Procedures for Design Change and Configuration Control of documents during Design and Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(7) Plan (List and schedule) for third party agreements and permits including utilities, real estate, railroads, transit-oriented development/joint development, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(8) Investigation and Testing Plan (List and schedule) for site surveys, geotechnical and materials investigation before/during design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Project Controls</td>
<td>(1) Document and Records Controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Internal reporting procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Cost Control Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Schedule Control Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Risk Control Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Dispute / Conflict Resolution Plan (claims avoidance and claims resolution)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Project construction delivery and procurement plan</td>
<td>(1) Procedures for Procurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Procurement Plan and Schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Contracting Strategy for Transit-Oriented Development and Joint Development, if applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) Opportunities, Federal DBE, State/Local WBE &amp; MBE, Plans and Goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Negotiating and Approving Change Orders and Claims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Procedures for claims avoidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 2.6  | Labor relations and Policies | (1) Wage Rates and Classifications  
(2) Wage and Hour Requirements  
(3) State and Local Regulations |
| 2.7  | Construction Procedures for Fixed Infrastructure | (1) Construction Contract Administration  
(2) Construction Management  
(3) Construction Inspection  
(4) Coordination with Third Parties  
(5) Site Logistics Plan (materials transport and storage; temporary site facilities; maintenance of existing pedestrian ways, transit and traffic operations during construction; protection of existing utilities)  
(6) Processing Shop Drawings, Bulletins, and RFIs  
(7) Substantial Completion; Final Completion |
| 2.8  | Start up and Revenue Operations | (1) Testing plan elements are identified and would be expanded at a later date  
(2) Closeout materials (warranties, testing results, O&M manuals, spare parts, etc.) to be identified to provide direction to the Engineer  
(3) Plan for Training of Staff |
| 2.9  | QA/QC Plan | The QAP shall fully address all elements governing project activities through the design phase. The PMOC shall also confirm that the Project Sponsor has exhibited both a Quality Assurance and Quality Control review of its Engineering package. |
| 2.10 | Safety and Security Management Plan | In place and in compliance with FTA guidance as provided in Circular C5800.1. Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA) and Threat and Vulnerability Assessment (TVA) are complete. Safety and Security Design Criteria development is complete. |
| 2.11 | Real estate Acquisition and Relocation Plan | (1) Conforms with and is expressly incorporated within the Design Drawings, Master Schedule and budget for all phases and types of work planned or anticipated. Further, the RAMP must meet all federal requirements. The Project Sponsor is to provide a complete list of all parcels with title searches on all properties to be acquired and RAMP procedures.  
(2) Preparation of a relocation plan to include interviews with potential displacees which stresses that displacees are not to move until project plans have been finalized.  
(3) Project Sponsor shall exhibit management capacity and capabilities to implement the real estate acquisition and relocation process, including organization structure and staffing plan and any consultant agreements undertaken in support of these activities. |
<p>| 2.12 | Rail and Bus Fleet Management Plan | Plan demonstrates consistency with the project scope, NEPA documents, and the project’s Operations Plan. |
| 2.13 | Before and After Study Documentation | Plan submitted in accordance with FTA guidance; verify that the plan has preserved the project scope and capital cost information (may not be required for Small Starts projects). |
| 3.0 | MANAGEMENT CAPACITY AND CAPABILITY | |
| 3.1  | Organizational charts | Project organization charts show the complete organization, covering all project functions and all project personnel, regardless of affiliation. Staffing levels should be indicated. Charts should be time-oriented to show different organizational arrangements for different phases of the project. |
| 3.2  | Staff qualifications/Experience | Key personnel in all organizations should be identified and their principal duties, reporting relationships, job |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chart</td>
<td>descriptions, job qualifications, and assigned responsibility and delegated authority should be defined. The size, qualifications, and availability of new and existing staff resources must be considered in relation to the human resource requirements and duration of the project. A responsibility matrix should be developed that identifies critical management activities and demonstrates the staff’s ability to satisfy these requirements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Staffing plan</td>
<td>Staffing levels should be indicated. Charts should be time-oriented to show different organizational arrangements for different phases of the project. The organization chart should be supplemented with a tabular staffing plan that shows percent utilization, mobilization start date, and release date (where applicable) information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Engineering/Design Consultants</td>
<td>During construction planning, careful examination of the existing labor situation has determined the impacts of DBE participation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 Agency-level processes and procedures</td>
<td>Should include project management policies and procedures and an adequate staff of professionals skilled in but not limited to, project controls, QA/QC, cost estimation, scheduling, procurement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3.6 Resumes of project team members | Resumes should be provided for both agency and consultant key staff. Resumes must demonstrate experience and ability to manage each of the following key project areas:  
  - Project management  
  - Environmental assessment and mitigation leads  
  - Operations planning, Fleet management lead  
  - Design team leads  
  - Quality assurance and Quality control lead  
  - Project controls leads  
  - Construction, permits, testing, start-up leads  
  - Real estate lead  
  - Safety review lead |

4.0 SCOPE

4.1 Scope Development

(1) Definition of the project (i.e., scope) contained in the project ROD/FONSI and most recent New Starts submittal agree with the scope as developed in Engineering Phase materials, including the approved PMP and the engineering design plans and specifications. Discrepancies or unclear scope items in the plans should be noted.

(2) Basic quantities, such as number and locations of facilities, peak and total vehicles, etc., identified in the environmental document and ROD/FONSI are the same as assumed in the current project definition.

(3) The current project design satisfies the capacity and operational objectives established in the approved environmental document.

(4) Mitigations committed to in the ROD (or project mitigation plans), when involving a physical or operational feature of the project, are incorporated - or in the process of being incorporated - into the engineering design, proposed construction program, and/or other implementation plans. Mitigations could include changes in design, use of different types of material, modified traffic control, restricted construction activities, etc.

(5) Results of the hazard and threat and vulnerability analyses are incorporated in the design criteria and the scope of work.

4.2 Design Package

A Basis of Design Report is required which presents the following content:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) Project Sponsor accepted design standards and performance objectives including consistency with the required transit capacity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Design, construction, system and vehicle interfaces are well known and defined. Vehicle dynamic clearance and structure clearance diagrams are prepared.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Design Reports, Concept of Operations Report, and configuration studies are adequate and complete.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Design packages and contract packages are defined and delineated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) The documents possess a level of definition, clarity, presentation and cross-referencing consistent with the scope definitions in following sections.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) The project is constructible. Adequate construction access and staging areas are identified.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Project Delivery Method Plan</td>
<td>Procedures for Procurement (advertising, bidding, awarding of contracts for consultants and construction contractors, procurement for equipment, etc.) are established including: Procurement Plan and Schedule (indicate project phase, durations for RFP, screening, interviews, selection, board approvals, etc.); Contracting Strategy for Transit-oriented and Joint Development; and identification of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE) Opportunities and Federal DBE and State/Local WBE &amp; MBE Plans and Goals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Constructability</td>
<td>Project Sponsor’s construction planning of the project has sufficiently and adequately addressed the constructability of the project. An in-depth constructability review is required of the Project Sponsor. It is a critical tool for synthesizing the design work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Site and Geotechnical Conditions</td>
<td>(1) Digitized aerial photogrammetry (aerial photo background; planimetric and topographic mapping) is complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Photo simulations and/or schematic renderings are available for stations, samples of the alignment, and unique features of the line.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Geotechnical investigations are complete including a subsurface exploration or laboratory testing program. Requirements for additional geotechnical investigations have been defined and identification of buried structures and utilities and identification of contaminated soils and other hazardous materials are complete.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>SCC 10 Guideway</td>
<td>(1) Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including location and extent of elevated or underground structures, rehabilitation or reuse of any existing infrastructure, structures, facilities, or systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) The choice of track or roadway design has been made for the line. Grade crossing construction is defined and clearances established for operations, maintenance, and emergency evacuation. Guideway drainage has been defined.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Major or critical work details, structural element dimensions, design interfaces, and physical interfaces have been identified and are defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Structural systems are established. Aerial guideway is dimensioned to show number of spans, span length, substructure design, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Preliminary mass balance diagrams have been developed for vertical alignments on fill or cut supported by topographic surveys and soil investigations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Retaining walls and fills are located and dimensioned and defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) Tunnels, both cut-and-cover and mined, are defined in terms of access and egress, construction access and laydown, openings for stations, passage chambers, ventilation or emergency access shafts or adits, sections, and profiles to depict and dimension major tunnel features. Tunnel design and dimensions have been cross checked to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adjacent building foundations and coordinated with the vehicle’s dynamic envelope, walkways and egress, tunnel lighting, and systems elements such as ventilation, communications, and traction power.</td>
<td>(8) Trackwork is advanced to a level where single line schematics of the track layout, plan and profile drawings, dimensioned layouts of turnouts and crossovers, and tabulations of track geometry (horizontal and vertical curve data) have been defined. The alignment of any tunnel structure is referenced to the center line of track and base of rail. Guideway sections, inclusive of aerial, tunnel and station cross sections, consistently show the distance from centerline of track to critical clearance points such as walls, walkways, and edges of platforms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(9) Special trackwork is located and adequately defined.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(10) Where used, the contact rail system is specified with typical details and required clearances provided. End ramps and anchors are located. Gaps are coordinated with the traction power supply system. Feeder and return conductor attachment are specified and typical details provided.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(11) The need for special track construction for noise or vibration control is identified with locations and dimensions and a preliminary choice is made for the noise and vibration control design.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>SCC 20 Stations, Stops, and Terminals</td>
<td>(1) Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including rehabilitation or reuse of any existing structures, facilities or systems. Major or critical operational fire/life safety, and security requirements have been defined. Interfaces with other transit facilities or structures are identified and passenger and public circulation concepts defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Station architecture is established. The drawing package consists of site plans and, for station buildings, floor plans, elevations, longitudinal and cross sections, and details illustrating typical and special architectural conditions. The finish concept should be clearly described. The location and outline of fare gates and barriers should be shown. The location of ticket vending machines, electronic passenger information displays, security systems and other platform amenities should be shown.</td>
<td>(2) Station architecture is established. The drawing package consists of site plans and, for station buildings, floor plans, elevations, longitudinal and cross sections, and details illustrating typical and special architectural conditions. The finish concept should be clearly described. The location and outline of fare gates and barriers should be shown. The location of ticket vending machines, electronic passenger information displays, security systems and other platform amenities should be shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the building to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as is provision for pedestrians and bicycles to access the public way from the building. Provision for motorized vehicles is also shown. Access to the platforms and buildings and within the buildings complies with ADA. Any parking lots or structures are shown.</td>
<td>(3) Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the building to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as is provision for pedestrians and bicycles to access the public way from the building. Provision for motorized vehicles is also shown. Access to the platforms and buildings and within the buildings complies with ADA. Any parking lots or structures are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Building sections and elevations illustrate the relationship of the station to grade (below, on-grade, elevated structure); the building structural system has been chosen and preliminary dimensions established for clearances.</td>
<td>(4) Building sections and elevations illustrate the relationship of the station to grade (below, on-grade, elevated structure); the building structural system has been chosen and preliminary dimensions established for clearances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Station building floor plans show vertical circulation systems including stairs, elevators, escalators, and support spaces for mechanical, plumbing, electrical, and communications systems. The floor plans should show the agent area, fare gate area, retail areas, and any crew or public facilities.</td>
<td>(5) Station building floor plans show vertical circulation systems including stairs, elevators, escalators, and support spaces for mechanical, plumbing, electrical, and communications systems. The floor plans should show the agent area, fare gate area, retail areas, and any crew or public facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Level boarding between the transit vehicle and the boarding platform complies with ADA. Documentation shows passenger level boarding design for all stations and/or satisfactory determination of infeasibility for one or more stations along with a satisfactory alternative plan for accessibility.</td>
<td>(6) Level boarding between the transit vehicle and the boarding platform complies with ADA. Documentation shows passenger level boarding design for all stations and/or satisfactory determination of infeasibility for one or more stations along with a satisfactory alternative plan for accessibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preliminary identification of arts-in-transit integrated into station design.</td>
<td>(7) Preliminary identification of arts-in-transit integrated into station design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Electrical systems should include a single line drawing including the source and distribution of power. Mechanical and electrical systems, including area drainage, piped utilities, heating ventilation and air conditioning, smoke evacuation, power, and lighting, are described and single line drawings are provided.</td>
<td>(8) Electrical systems should include a single line drawing including the source and distribution of power. Mechanical and electrical systems, including area drainage, piped utilities, heating ventilation and air conditioning, smoke evacuation, power, and lighting, are described and single line drawings are provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design interfaces among disciplines are defined on drawings, in standards, design criteria, specifications and contract package scopes.</td>
<td>(9) Design interfaces among disciplines are defined on drawings, in standards, design criteria, specifications and contract package scopes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>Parking structure design is progressed to a level consistent with station buildings as described above including vertical transportation and interface with the station buildings. Parking design is consistent with Record of Decision.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>SCC 30 Support Facilities: Yards, Shops, Administration Buildings</td>
<td>(1) Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including rehabilitation, reuse or expansion of any existing structures, facilities or systems. Major or critical operational fire/life safety, and security requirements have been defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) An architectural space program has been prepared for all occupied buildings including for modifications to existing buildings such as Control Centers. The support facility drawings are consistent with the architectural program. Adequate employee parking is provided.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Based on the vehicles chosen and utilization as set out in the fleet management plans, a review has been done to determine the number of vehicle spots and facilities (jacks, wheel truing, etc.) required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) A preliminary industrial engineering evaluation has been prepared for all workspaces in shops showing clearances, location of utilities (water, electric outlets, hose reels, etc.), and the flow of vehicles from revenue service through servicing and into storage or maintenance and then returning to service. Adequate space should be provided for material storage both in the building and outside.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) A site plan has been prepared showing vehicle (revenue, non-revenue, commercial and private) access to shop buildings, storage yard layout, track layout, and location of auxiliary buildings including pump houses, signal houses, and traction power substations. Provisions for fueling and fuel storage are located. The overall site plan (existing and proposed conditions) should include grading and drainage plans, site cross sections, utilities, and roadway and parking plans.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the building to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as is provision for vehicular and pedestrian access to new buildings. Access to the buildings and within the buildings complies with ADA.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) Basic facility architecture is established including vertical circulation requirements. The drawing package consists of site plans and for buildings floor plans, elevations, longitudinal and cross sections, and details illustrating typical and special architectural conditions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(8) Building sections and elevations illustrate the relationship of the buildings to grade (below, on-grade, elevated structure); the building structural system has been chosen and is dimensioned for clearances.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(9) Electrical systems should include a single line drawing including the source and distribution of power. Mechanical and electrical systems, including area drainage, piped utilities, heating ventilation and air conditioning, smoke evacuation, power, lighting, and fuel storage and dispensing are described and single line drawings are provided.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(10) Design interfaces among disciplines are defined on drawings, in standards, design criteria, specifications and contract package scopes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>SCC 40 Sitework and Special Condition</td>
<td>(1) Major drainage facilities, flood control, housing types, street crossings, traffic control, utilities, are defined and physical limits and interfaces identified, based upon alignment base mapping, plans, and profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Major or critical design decisions are defined including rehabilitation or reuse of existing structures or facilities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Areas requiring clearing or demolition are identified.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Utility key maps, lists of owners, symbols and notes are provided. Preliminary utility relocation plans have been developed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Mitigation plans are progressed for environmental issues and have accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigation facilities such as wetlands, buffers, noise barriers and historic preservation requirements are identified and located.</td>
<td>(6) A survey for hazardous materials has been completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On-site and off-site mitigation plan requirements are identified and outline plans prepared.</td>
<td>(7) On-site and off-site mitigation plan requirements are identified and outline plans prepared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural elements for retaining walls and other site structures are advanced in design.</td>
<td>(8) Structural elements for retaining walls and other site structures are advanced in design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preliminary mass balance diagrams for vertical alignments on fill or cut are supported by topographic surveys and soil investigations.</td>
<td>(9) Preliminary mass balance diagrams for vertical alignments on fill or cut are supported by topographic surveys and soil investigations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roadway modifications necessary to accommodate stations, guideway, or support facilities are defined and design is complete to a level comparable to that specified for guideway and stations. Traffic control devises or modifications have been defined.</td>
<td>(10) Roadway modifications necessary to accommodate stations, guideway, or support facilities are defined and design is complete to a level comparable to that specified for guideway and stations. Traffic control devises or modifications have been defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The landscaping requirements, including irrigation systems, are defined on the station, support facility, and guideway plans.</td>
<td>(11) The landscaping requirements, including irrigation systems, are defined on the station, support facility, and guideway plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The presence of buried structures, utilities, and contaminated soils which may have to be removed, backfilled or which would otherwise be unavailable for backfilling, has been taken into account.</td>
<td>(12) The presence of buried structures, utilities, and contaminated soils which may have to be removed, backfilled or which would otherwise be unavailable for backfilling, has been taken into account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the buildings to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as are provisions for pedestrians and bicycles and special maintenance access. Provision for motorized vehicle access is shown. Adequate surface parking including spaces for disabled parking and facilities for bicycles is provided, where needed. Access to stations and buildings complies with ADA.</td>
<td>(13) Within the site context, the building footprints are shown. The relationship of the buildings to grade and to adjacent facilities is clearly defined, as are provisions for pedestrians and bicycles and special maintenance access. Provision for motorized vehicle access is shown. Adequate surface parking including spaces for disabled parking and facilities for bicycles is provided, where needed. Access to stations and buildings complies with ADA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adequate construction access has been considered; access and staging areas are identified.</td>
<td>(14) Adequate construction access has been considered; access and staging areas are identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maintenance of traffic and railroad protective flagging are identified and costs estimated.</td>
<td>(15) Maintenance of traffic and railroad protective flagging are identified and costs estimated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>SCC 50 Systems</td>
<td>(1) Major or critical design decisions have been researched and decided including connections to, and rehabilitation or reuse of, existing systems. Pre-construction site reconnaissance and soil resistivity surveys are complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Major or critical work details, structural element dimensions, design interfaces and physical interfaces have been identified and are defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications and contract package scopes. Single line or functional block drawings are prepared for each system. Technologies have been chosen, evaluated for cost effectiveness, and expected performance defined. Major equipment (for the control room, substations, grade crossings, tunnel ventilation, and traction power) has been defined and identified in terms of baseline specifications, outline drawings, general arrangements, and standard drawings and details.</td>
<td>(2) Major or critical work details, structural element dimensions, design interfaces and physical interfaces have been identified and are defined in terms of drawings, standards, criteria, specifications and contract package scopes. Single line or functional block drawings are prepared for each system. Technologies have been chosen, evaluated for cost effectiveness, and expected performance defined. Major equipment (for the control room, substations, grade crossings, tunnel ventilation, and traction power) has been defined and identified in terms of baseline specifications, outline drawings, general arrangements, and standard drawings and details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Signaling and Train Control – Decisions have been made regarding those sections of alignment to be operated under visual or traffic signal control as opposed to train signal systems. Operations analysis has determined the most efficient location of interlockings based on track layout, headways, train lengths, and braking tables as well as requirements of each interlocking and its control limits. Site specific requirements are defined (for signal structural work) and locations for signal enclosures and relay rooms including sizes as well as room layouts (relay, termination, power) are defined and identified. Signal cable routing methodology as well as power supply and distribution are identified and defined. Software and interface requirements (to facilities, existing system, and other system elements) are identified and defined. The scope of construction between contractors and other operators (railroads or existing agency systems) is defined. Maintenance, testing and training requirements are identified and initially defined (factory acceptance, site acceptance, field integration, start up, etc.).</td>
<td>(3) Signaling and Train Control – Decisions have been made regarding those sections of alignment to be operated under visual or traffic signal control as opposed to train signal systems. Operations analysis has determined the most efficient location of interlockings based on track layout, headways, train lengths, and braking tables as well as requirements of each interlocking and its control limits. Site specific requirements are defined (for signal structural work) and locations for signal enclosures and relay rooms including sizes as well as room layouts (relay, termination, power) are defined and identified. Signal cable routing methodology as well as power supply and distribution are identified and defined. Software and interface requirements (to facilities, existing system, and other system elements) are identified and defined. The scope of construction between contractors and other operators (railroads or existing agency systems) is defined. Maintenance, testing and training requirements are identified and initially defined (factory acceptance, site acceptance, field integration, start up, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Traffic signals - Basic coordination between train control and traffic signals or other traffic controls has been evaluated. The interaction among traffic signals in the immediate area has been coordinated with local jurisdictions. Simulations have been completed on the impact of the transit system on local traffic and the impact of signalization on transit running times. Decisions have been made regarding transit vehicle pre-emption or priority</td>
<td>(4) Traffic signals - Basic coordination between train control and traffic signals or other traffic controls has been evaluated. The interaction among traffic signals in the immediate area has been coordinated with local jurisdictions. Simulations have been completed on the impact of the transit system on local traffic and the impact of signalization on transit running times. Decisions have been made regarding transit vehicle pre-emption or priority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and interaction with emergency vehicle priority systems such as Opticon. Site specific requirements are defined (for structural work) and locations defined for crossing gates and signal enclosures. Related requirements for grade crossing protection, including use of four-quadrant gates or other methods to prevent vehicles from circumventing crossing gates have been identified and defined. The location of vehicle sensing elements is shown on intersection drawings. Software and interface requirements (to the train control system and other system elements) are identified and initially defined. The scope of construction between contractors and others is defined. Maintenance, testing and training requirements are identified and initially defined (factory acceptance, site acceptance, field integration, start up, etc.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>Traction Power – Traction power requirements and the location of substations is established. The basis of design including nominal project voltage and voltage limits are identified. The OCS system or contact rail layout is defined including conductor sizes relative to existing parts of system, as well as any supplementary parallel feeders to meet design requirements for substation out of service scenarios. Minimizations of voltage drop, maximization of vehicle propulsion system performance, and train regeneration issues have been initially addressed. Substation equipment requirements are identified. Single line drawings are provided. Preliminary equipment performance specifications have been developed. The source of commercial power is identified and preliminary negotiations have begun and technical interface conditions established. Substation grounding, stray current monitoring or testing, lightning arresters, and protective systems for equipment and utility system faults have been identified. Supervisory control has been defined as well as requirements for integration with central control.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>Overhead Contact Systems (OCS) – OCS system type is identified and issues associated with temperature variations are addressed. Decisions have been made regarding the types of support structures or poles to be used, particularly in urban area. Tensions for the contact wire and messenger wire are defined; maximum distances between tensioning points are identified. OCS is sectionalized in coordination with the traction power supply. The basis for OCS design is established and design issues associated with overlaps, section insulators, and crossing and crossover locations are preliminarily addressed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>Communication System – Communications plans, including building or equipment locations, and provisions for station message signs, public address, emergency phones, security cameras, intrusion detection, and other system elements are defined and coordinated with station, guideway, support facility, and central control building plans. Cabling schemes are coordinated with the guideway and utilities. Preliminary specifications for the radio system have been developed and the system is coordinated with the vehicles and central control. Communication between field locations and central control is defined and coordinated with other systems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>Fare Collection System – The fare collection concept is defined and is accepted by all stakeholders. The number and location of fare collection equipment has been determined and is shown on the drawings. Basic equipment is specified.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>Central Control – Operations control center plan is provided, including basic layout and space allocation requirements. System interface requirements and modifications for existing control center facilities are coordinated with the systems being controlled. Provisions for security and emergency response are considered. Preliminary equipment and control system requirements are established.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>SCC 60 ROW, Land and existing</td>
<td>(1) The Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan (RAMP) is complete. Refer to the OP-23 RAMP for more information. Real estate documents and drawings identify the full takes, partial takes, temporary and permanent easements, and other rights. Any special access requirements for existing structures have been identified. Possible eminent domain actions need to be identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Site surveys include property lines and identify structures for buildings, site features, utilities, and surface improvements such as streets and railroad rights-of-way, including private crossings of railroad rights-of-way.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) The real estate information and survey information is fully coordinated with drawings of structures for guideways and buildings; site features; utilities; streets, railroads, transitways; construction easements; and site access and staging areas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Parties to be relocated are identified and an action plan is developed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Hazardous material sites are identified and characterized and the responsibility and scope of remedial actions specified.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12</td>
<td>SCC 70 Vehicles</td>
<td>(1) Refer to OP-38 for additional information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Vehicle performance requirements are specified and incorporated into the Design Criteria, the Operations and Maintenance Plan, and the Bus or Rail Fleet Management Plans. Preliminary specifications must include allowable vehicle static and dynamic clearance diagrams, allowable axle weight, allowable total weight, door location, floor height, passenger capacity (seated and under heavy load conditions), and ADA accommodation. For buses, the specification must also include fuel type and turning radius. For rail, the specification must include acceleration and deceleration characteristics and expected train consist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) System Interface Functional Descriptions have been developed and advanced to include the following: definition of the subsystems that constitute the overall vehicle system; description and graphic depiction of each interface between on-board subsystems and wayside systems; and, description of how each subsystem will meet the project requirements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Expected vehicle servicing, periodic maintenance, and component repair and replacement requirements (estimated time to repair and frequency of repair) should be compiled to support shop design (SCC 30).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Testing requirements have been developed to include the following: high level Test Program Plan for both production and on-site acceptance including requirements for factory inspection and testing, First Article and Pre-shipment inspections, static and dynamic testing, and conditional acceptance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) Maintenance and Training Requirements should be defined and identified including development of maintenance and training requirements for new system elements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) Requirements for special tools and equipment have been established as well as requirements for initial spare parts orders.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>SCC 80 Professional services</td>
<td>(1) The roles and responsibilities of Project Sponsor’s professional consultants (design, engineering, and construction management) may be distinguished from Project Sponsor’s own professional staff. If alternative delivery systems (design-build, CM/GC) are proposed, the costs of design professionals employed by the contractor should be identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Costs associated with construction – building contractors’ management, labor, indirect costs, overhead, profit, construction insurance should not be included in SCC 80 but in SCC 10 through 50 as appropriate. Cost estimates should conform to this allocation of cost.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) When Project Sponsor’s manual labor, equipment and facilities are used to facilitate construction or to assist in construction of the project, a Force Account Plan and cost estimate should be provided. The cost of these services should be applied to the appropriate SCC code with the exception of start-up training.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Costs associated with permits, insurance, and taxes are researched, identified, and estimated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) Costs associated with start-up training and simulated operation for operators and supervision is estimated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>SCHEDULE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Basis of Schedule</td>
<td>(1) Includes a logical document that discreetly defines the basis for the development of the project schedule that identifies key elements, issues and special considerations (assumptions, exclusions, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Describes the planning basis, including resource planning methodology, activity identification, duration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>estimating, and source and methodology for determining logic and sequencing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>Identifies labor productivity adjustments, including congestion assessment, extended work hours, winter work, curfews, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>Documents all production rates, identifies basis for startup and sequencing requirements, and defines any owner requirements (regulatory, environmental, Quality/inspection)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>Is consistent in use of the time sensitive variables in the capital cost estimate, including year of expenditure assumptions, and durations incorporated into the master schedule.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Schedule Format</td>
<td>Is consistent with relevant, identifiable industry or engineering practices. Software is appropriate for the size and complexity of the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Schedule structure</td>
<td>(1) Work Breakdown Structure has been applied in the development of the schedule. (2) WBS consistent with the analyzed plan and program for all project participants’ agreed upon roles, responsibilities, capabilities and capacities. (3) The project schedule is in original and SCC format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Schedule level</td>
<td>The schedule shall be sufficiently developed in detail to determine the validity of the project critical path to revenue operations. It should break out, at a minimum, project milestones, FFGA/SSGA related work, planning and environmental, public involvement, Project Development, value engineering, final design, right-of-way, permits, third party agreements, public and private utility relocations, safety and security, construction, trackwork, train control systems, vehicles, system integration, communications, fare collection, and startup and testing in sufficient detail to confirm the reasonableness of durations and sequencing and to estimate the probability of schedule risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Schedule elements</td>
<td>(1) Schedule reflects the project scope that is described in the approved environmental document. (2) Schedule includes adequate time and appropriate sequencing for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Reviews</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Required FTA-related environmental, risk assessment, PMP reviews, readiness reviews at designated milestones, and grant approvals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Project reviews by applicable local, state and federal jurisdictions and affected third parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Right-of-way acquisition; household/business relocations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Utilities relocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Railroad purchase and/or usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Interagency Agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Funding time frames and/or milestones for FTA and non-FTA sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Procurement and manufacturing durations for equipment and vehicles, especially for Long Lead Items, are adequate and complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Procurement of design contracts for civil/facilities, systems, and vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Performance of design contracts to produce 100 percent complete documents prior to bidding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Bid and award periods reflect the required sequencing and durations for the selected project delivery method and logically tied to the proper work activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Construction processes and durations are adequate and complete, and allow schedule contingency for potential delays, including inter-agency work, utility relocation, civil, architectural, and systems work, Project Sponsor operations and maintenance, mobilization, and integrated pre-revenue testing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>Resource scheduling</td>
<td>(1) Quantities and costs as defined in the cost estimate match the resources/costs assigned to the activities in the schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>The distribution of resources and costs per specification or industry standards are reasonably associated to the activity it is assigned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>Schedule control</td>
<td>Define the approach to and use of scheduling tools, such as scheduling software, Project Sponsor procedures for schedule change and update, use of a work breakdown structure, assignment of staff responsibility for schedule, cost loading, resource loading, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.0 CAPITAL COST ESTIMATE

#### 6.1 Basis of Estimate

1. The Project Sponsor needs to provide a Basis of Estimate report describing its cost estimating approach. The report should be developed by the Project Sponsor as part of its initial Project Development work and updated with each subsequent estimating effort.

2. The Basis of Estimate outline should be as follows:
   - **Estimating Methodology** – Describe the general approach to defining and quantifying the project capital cost estimate.
   - **Sources of Cost Data** – Define the nature and sources for cost data used in the preparation of the estimate:
     - Cost Estimating Assumptions
     - Allocated Contingency
     - Unallocated Contingency
     - Escalation
     - Contract packages
   - **Estimating Procedures** – If multiple parties are estimating parts of the project, this memo should help to ensure consistency of approach.
   - **Organization and Management of Cost Data** (by segment elements; project-wide elements)
   - **Bottom Up and Top Down Approaches** (e.g. at Entry to Project Development, it could be reasonable to use Bottom Up estimating approach for Guideway, Stations, Support Facilities; and Top Down estimating approach for Sitework, Systems, ROW Land Existing Improvements, and Vehicles)
   - **Facilities (Guideway, Stations, Support Facilities) Costing Procedures** for typical construction methods and for construction and components unique to transit projects.
   - **Estimate Limitations** – Describe perceived or known uncertainties, as well as unknowns that could lead to changes in the estimate due to changes in project scope and design standards, incorrect unit cost or quantity assumptions, and unforeseen problems in implementation.
   - **Tracking Costs** – Describe how capital costs in the SCC format will be tracked through construction, revenue operations, etc. (e.g. provision in Division 1 requiring contractor to submit SCC update with monthly pay application). FTA requires that costs be tracked in the SCC format through construction, revenue operations and through two years post-revenue operations to document contract closeout and the “after” point for the Before and After Study. (Note that the Before and After Study may not be required for Small Starts projects.)

#### 6.2 Value Engineering (VE) report

1. VE effort has been performed on the design completed in Project Development and a report has been prepared. Focus should be on VE recommendations approved by the Project Sponsor and incorporated into the project. The Project Sponsor should identify why recommendations were or were not approved.

2. The cost estimate should incorporate the accepted changes.

#### 6.3 Standard Cost Categories (SCC) Workbook

1. Work Breakdown Structure formatted to conform to the FTA SCC.

2. Workbook includes SCC annualized worksheets.

3. Estimate is in general agreement with the latest SCC information contained in the Project Sponsor’s most recent
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Starts submission.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 6.4 | Capital cost estimate | (1) SCC category 10-50: Fixed Construction (guideways, stations, support facilities, sitework, systems)  
- Construction Materials  
  - Quantities have been calculated with appropriate conservatism to accommodate development to a more advanced stage of design if appropriate  
- Allowances for material quantities have been included for commodities which cannot be fully quantified at the present level of design  
- Unit Prices have been developed using the best available local market information;  
- Project sales tax exemption status has been established if appropriate and incorporated in materials costs  
- Quotes have been obtained for specialty and price-sensitive materials  
- Materials costs reflect market volatility  
- Construction labor  
  - Local wage rates, fringe benefits, and work rules are incorporated  
  - Local payroll taxes and insurance rates are incorporated  
  - Holiday / show-up / vacation pay is incorporated  
  - Crew productivity is appropriate and conservative for the task under evaluation  
  - Availability and variability of utility and railroad outages and “track time” have been incorporated in a conservative manner in determining the crew productivities for impacted work  
- Construction equipment  
  - Local equipment rental rates and current fuel costs are incorporated  
  - Quotes have been obtained for specialty equipment.  
- Escalation for Construction Materials, Labor and Equipment  
  - Confirm that adequate escalation rates have been applied to estimates of material, labor and equipment costs. Costs to anticipate prices at the time of project bid.  
- Special considerations  
  - Utility and Railroad labor, equipment, and overhead rates have been verified and incorporated in third party or “force account” work pricing, as well as local utility/RR work and safety rules  
  - Special consideration has been given to support operations and facilities for tunneling operations, facilities to support operations in contaminated/hazardous materials, etc.  
- Construction Indirect Costs, Multipliers for Risk etc.  
  - Contractor indirect and overhead costs are advanced beyond a percent of the associated construction direct costs and should be analyzed based on field and home office indirect costs such as contract duration, appropriate levels of staffing (including project managers, engineers, safety engineers, schedulers, superintendents, QC engineers, craft general foreman, labor stewards/nondirective labor, warehousing, project trucking, survey layout, purchasing, timekeeping, etc.), mobilization/demobilization costs, equipment standby/idle time costs, reviewer office/lab/tool facilities, safety equipment, QA/QC testing equipment, temporary utilities (sanitary/power/light/heat), jobsite and public security measures, etc.  
  - Appropriate costs have been included for payment and performance bonds and special insurance requirements (RR protective, pollution liability, etc.).  
- Other construction insurance costs and/or project-wide coverage (Owner Controlled Insurance Policy) has been included based on quotes from appropriate carriers. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Item Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Contractor profit / risk costs have been incorporated that reflect the proposed delivery method and expected level of competition by contract package (higher profit margin where few competitors will bid).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Cat. 60 - Real Estate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Includes estimated costs (acquisition costs) for the real estate and associated relocation costs. Costs for professional services, both contracted and in-house legal, appraisal, review appraisal, settlement costs, environmental site assessments, demolition, real estate and relocation consultants have been included (and not included in SCC 80). Easements, acquisitions, inspections, takings, etc. have been appraised or estimated by qualified professionals familiar with local real estate markets and practices, especially any acquisitions involving freight railroads. Includes allowance for the expected increase in costs over appraised value. Includes costs for taxes attributable to real estate acquisition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Cat. 70 - Vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Estimates account for current purchase prices for similar vehicles or quoted prices from manufacturers. Includes costs for professional services (both contracted and in-house) for vehicle design and procurement, and not included in SCC 80. Estimates allow costs for special tools and equipment and spare parts. Requirements for non-revenue support vehicles identified and include in estimate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Cat. 80 - Professional Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Costs included for both contracted and in-house, for all professional, technical and management services related to the design and construction of fixed infrastructure (Cats. 10 - 50) during the Project Development, engineering, and construction phases of the project. This includes environmental work, surveying, geotechnical investigations, design, engineering and architectural services; materials and soils testing during construction; specialty services such as safety or security analyses; value engineering, risk assessment, cost estimating, scheduling. Before and After studies, ridership modeling and analyses, auditing, legal services, administration and management, etc. by agency staff or outside consultants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Professional liability insurance and other non-construction insurance should be included on 80.05.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Confirmation that cost estimates are based on realistic levels of staffing for the duration of the project through close-out of construction contracts. (The estimate should be consistent with the Project Management Plan.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Confirmation that costs for permitting, agency review fees, legal fees, etc. have been included.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• General Conditions included for design, construction, and procurement contracts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If alternative delivery systems (design-build, CM/GC) are proposed, the costs of design professionals employed by the contractor should be identified. Professionals employed by the contractor should be identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Contingency</td>
<td>Allocated Contingency – Confirmation that adequate contingency has been allocated to each of the SCC categories based on the perceived risk inherent to each category’s estimate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cat. 90 - Unallocated Contingency - Confirmation that adequate contingency has been added to the total project cost based on the perceived project risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Cat. 100 – Finance Charges</td>
<td>Finance charges included, consistent with FTA’s Financial Management Oversight Consultant’s review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Inflation</td>
<td>Confirmation that adequate inflation rates have been applied to Base Year project costs to anticipate costs at procurement or bid; the Year of Expenditure costs should be developed thoughtfully. Reference indices should include ENR Building Cost Index and Construction Cost Index or other demonstrated authoritative source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Item Detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>RISK AND CONTINGENCY MANAGEMENT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 7.1  | Risk process established | (1) Risk organization is in place, with independent reporting to executive management and roles and responsibilities defined.  
(2) Contingency management, contingency use authority, and reporting structure is established. |
| 7.2  | Risk identification | (1) Risk register is developed, with risk categories and priorities.  
(2) Process is established to update risk register. |
| 7.3  | Risk assessment | (1) Valuation of project cost risk by method appropriate for project  
(2) Valuation of project schedule risk by appropriate methods  
(3) Documented report demonstrating valuation method and result |
| 7.4  | Risk Mitigation | (1) Mitigation process in-place with documented responsibilities.  
(2) Established insurance plan  
(3) Contingency amounts identified and tied to risk assessment  
(4) Requirements risks clearly identified and resolved; plans in place for unresolved requirements risks  
(5) Secondary mitigation plan defined and documented |
| 7.5  | Risk management | (1) Plans for amendment of the risk register during the course of the work, to both succinctly catalogue additional significant issues that arise, as well as to identify closure of issues as they become resolved to the satisfaction of the Project Sponsor and the FTA.  
(2) Plans and timing for systematically updating the RCMP. |
| 8.0  | CERTIFICATIONS, REPORTS, AND ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS |  |
| 8.1  | Administrative requirements |  |
| 8.1.1| Legal Authority to implement transit mode project | The Project Sponsor must perform a review of existing statutes to gain a full understanding of the Project Sponsor’s authority and any legal constraints that may affect the project. The purpose should be to identify requirements and constraints in an orderly and timely manner and to deal with them as the project advances. Failure to recognize and accommodate legal requirements may jeopardize the entire project and, at the very least, severely impact the subsequent grant approval process and project schedule, as well as project costs. The project sponsor must be diligent in maintaining cognizance of changes in the legislative/regulatory environment which may impose future constraints on a project. This legal authority must be reviewed to confirm that it addresses all forms of project delivery that may be considered. |
| 8.1.2| Legal Authority to use alternative project delivery method | Provide evidence of authority under non-Design-Bid-Build format. |
Appendix D: References


APPENDIX D: REFERENCES


Federal Transit Administration (FTA). “Pre-Award and Post-Delivery Audits of Rolling Stock Purchases.” 20 Feb 2015.


## Appendix E: Acronyms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A&amp;E</td>
<td>architectural and engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADA</td>
<td>Americans with Disabilities Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASHRAE</td>
<td>American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFMP</td>
<td>Bus Fleet Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPPM</td>
<td>Best Practices Procurement Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRT</td>
<td>bus rapid transit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>contract administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CE</td>
<td>categorical exclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFR</td>
<td>Code of Federal Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIL</td>
<td>Certifiable Item List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIP</td>
<td>Capital Improvement Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>construction manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM/GC</td>
<td>construction manager/general contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMAR</td>
<td>construction manager at risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>Construction Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COI</td>
<td>conflict of interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPM</td>
<td>critical path method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CQP</td>
<td>Construction Quality Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVS</td>
<td>certified value specialist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B</td>
<td>design/build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B/B</td>
<td>design/bid/build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D/B/O/M</td>
<td>design/build/operate/maintain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBE</td>
<td>Disadvantaged Business Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOT</td>
<td>Department of Transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECHO</td>
<td>Electronic Clearing House Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD</td>
<td>final design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFGA</td>
<td>Full Funding Grant Agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHWA</td>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMCSA</td>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FONSI</td>
<td>Finding of No Significant Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTA</td>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC</td>
<td>general contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC</td>
<td>general engineering consultant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFB</td>
<td>Invitation for Bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIPP</td>
<td>Injury and Illness Prevention Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISI</td>
<td>Institute for Sustainable Infrastructure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITP</td>
<td>Integrated Test Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEED®</td>
<td>Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-21</td>
<td>Moving Ahead for Progress in the 21st Century (Public Law 112-141)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPO</td>
<td>Metropolitan Planning Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEPA</td>
<td>National Environmental Policy Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPRM</td>
<td>Notice of Proposed Rulemaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTI</td>
<td>National Transit Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O&amp;M</td>
<td>operations and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFE</td>
<td>owner-furnished equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMP</td>
<td>Operations and Maintenance Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSHA</td>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD</td>
<td>project development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHA</td>
<td>Preliminary Hazard Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMC</td>
<td>program management consultant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMOC</td>
<td>Program Management Oversight Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMP</td>
<td>Project Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRD</td>
<td>Project Requirements Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA</td>
<td>quality assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA/QC</td>
<td>quality assurance/quality control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QAP</td>
<td>Quality Assurance Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QC</td>
<td>quality control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QMP</td>
<td>Quality Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAMP</td>
<td>Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCMP</td>
<td>Risk and Contingency Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE</td>
<td>resident engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC</td>
<td>request for change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFI</td>
<td>request for information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFP</td>
<td>request for proposals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROD</td>
<td>Record of Decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROW</td>
<td>right of way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAVE</td>
<td>Society of American Value Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEPP</td>
<td>Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGR</td>
<td>State of Good Repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIT</td>
<td>system integrated test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOV</td>
<td>scope of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCP</td>
<td>Safety and Security Certification Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCVR</td>
<td>Safety and Security Certification Verification Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSGA</td>
<td>Small Starts Grant Agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSMP</td>
<td>Safety and Security Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSO</td>
<td>state safety oversight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSP</td>
<td>System Security Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSPP</td>
<td>System Safety Program Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSR</td>
<td>Safety and Security Readiness Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STIP</td>
<td>Statewide Transportation Improvement Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAM</td>
<td>transit asset management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TrAMS</td>
<td>Transit Award Management System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO</td>
<td>Transit and Safety Oversight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVA</td>
<td>Threat and Vulnerability Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URA</td>
<td>Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USACE</td>
<td>U.S. Army Corps of Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USC</td>
<td>United States Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USGBC</td>
<td>United States Green Building Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VE</td>
<td>value engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>volatile organic compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBS</td>
<td>work breakdown structure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Agency (Project Sponsor), 1, 7, 14, 15, 16, 18, 24, 27, 36, 66, 68, 72, 78, 81, 88, 89, 91, 92, 121, 124; goals and Capital Improvement Plan, 14; role during commissioning, 94; role during construction, 77; role in Project Development, 13; role in safety management, 91
alternative delivery, 24, 25; methods, 9
alternatives analysis, 60
American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), 75, 99
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), 6, 20, 36, 37
Appendices, 129
as-built documentation, 102
audit: during construction, 92
Best Practices Procurement Manual (BPPM), 119, 120, 121, 122
Bus Fleet Management Plan (BFMP), 30
bus rapid transit (BRT), 117
Buy America Act, 6, 20, 35, 36, 78, 103, 123, 124
capital assets, 16
Capital Improvement Plan (CIP), 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19
capital projects planning, 12
categorical exclusion, 46, 50, 61
Certifiable Item List (CIL), 34
certified value specialist (CVS), 66
change control during construction, 84
commissioning, 93
commissioning plan, 96
communications: during construction, 87
community outreach: during construction, 87
Configuration Management Plan, 34
contict of interest (COI), 89
construction, 77
Construction Management Plan (CMP), 30
construction manager (CM), 78
Construction Manager at Risk (CMAR), 25
construction manager/general contractor (CM/GC), 7, 9
construction manager/management (CM), 9, 24, 25, 27, 30, 58, 66, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 86, 92, 94, 99, 102
Construction Quality Plan (CQP), 30
Construction Safety and Security Plan, 34
consultant, 62, 78, See also general engineering consultant, See also program management consultant; role in Project Development, 13
contract administrator, 33, 104
contract management and administration, 82
contract management planning, 32
contractor, 94; role in safety management, 91
Core Capacity, 7, 62
cost control during construction, 84
critical path method (CPM), 114, 115
Davis-Bacon Act, 19, 121, 122
delivery method, 9, 62
delivery methods, 9
Department of Transportation (DOT), 36, 117, 124
design: definition – sufficient level of design, 7
Design, 56
design/bid/build (D/B/B), 7, 8, 24, 25, 77, 78, 120
design/build (D/B), 7, 9, 25, 77, 78
design/build/operate/maintain (D/B/O/M), 9
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE), 18, 124
document control during construction, 86
Electronic Clearing House Operation (ECHO), 19, 117
Equal Employment Opportunity Plan, 18
Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), 123
Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration (FMCSA), 99
Federal Transit Administration (FTA): Office of Transit and Safety Oversight (TSO), 35
Federal Transit Administration (FTA), 1, 2, 7, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 26, 30, 31, 34, 35, 38, 71, 72, 73, 99, 103, 106, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 129;
working with, 2
Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI), 61
force account management, 87
Full Funding Grant Agreement (FFGA), 7, 62
general contractor (GC), 7, 9, 25, 82, 94, 123
general engineering consultant (GEC), 24, 27, 79, 81
Handbook: how to use this Handbook, 2; purpose of this Handbook, 1
Injury and Illness Prevention Plan (IIPP), 34
Institute for Sustainable Infrastructure (ISI), 74
Integrated Test Plan (ITP), 99
introduction to Handbook, 1
invitation for bid (IFB), 120
Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design. See LEED
LEED, 74, 75, 76, 94, 96
Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO), 117
National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), 7, 8, 19, 60, 61, 64
National Transit Asset Management System (TAMS), 14
National Transit Institute (NTI), 1, 11
New Start, 7, 62
Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (NPRM), 35
O&M, 9, 25, 30, 34, 62, 66, 68, 79, 86, 93, 95, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 104
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 91, 99
operation and maintenance. See O&M
Operational Hazard Analysis (OHA), 34
Operations and Maintenance Plan (OMP), 30, 34
owner-furnished equipment (OFE), 58, 93, 96, 98
permitting, 83
post-delivery audit, 103
Preliminary Hazard Analysis (PHA), 34
Principles of Project Management, 10
procurement, 119
program management, 62
program management consultant (PMC), 20, 24, 56
progress payments, 87
project: closeout - administrative, 106; closeout - contractual, 104; definition of, 3; characteristics of, 6; life cycle, 8
Project Development (PD), 12, 58; roles of agency and consultant, 13
Project Implementation Plan, 30
Project Initiation, 20
project management: objectives, 10; principles of, 10; additional help and resources, 11; process, 10; training, 11
Project Management Oversight Contractor (PMOC), 26, 30, 31, 34, 103
Project Management Plan (PMP), 10, 13, 20, 24, 27, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33, 57, 62, 72, 77, 80, 82, 89, 91, 93, 94, 96, 109, 125
project manager, 32, 62, 66, 72, 80; role, 3
Project Requirements Definition (PRD), 20, 21, 22, 59, 62, 107
Project Sponsor. See Agency
QA, 56, 57, 68, 73, 77, 89
quality assurance (QA), 31, 56, 56, 57, 68, 73, 77, 89
Quality Assurance Plan (QAP), 30
quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC), 31
quality control (QC), 31, 56, 57, 68, 72, 73, 79
quality management: during construction, 89
Quality Management Plan (QMP), 30, 31
Rail Activation Plan (RAP), 34
Real Estate Acquisition and Management Plan (RAMP), 30
Record of Decision (ROD), 61
reference list, 156
report. See also SSCVR, Safety and Security Certification Verification Report
request for change (RFC), 79
request for information (RFI), 78
request for proposals (RFP), 118
resident engineer (RE), 78, 82, 83, 86
right-of-way (ROW), 7, 58, 59, 64, 65
Risk and Contingency Management Plan (RCMP), 30, 31
safety: management during construction, 91
safety and security certification, 99
Safety and Security Certification Plan (SSCP), 34
Safety and Security Certification Verification Report (SSCVR), 100
Safety and Security Management Plan (SSMP), 30, 33, 34, 100, 103
safety and security management planning, 33
Safety and Security Readiness Reviews (SSRR), 35
schedule: control during construction, 83
scope of work (SOW), 21, 22, 27, 56, 57, 58, 59, 64, 56, 71, 90, 105
security, 33
Security and Emergency Preparedness Plan (SEPP), 34
Small Starts Grant Agreement (SSGA), 8, 62
Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE), 66
stakeholder: external stakeholder reviews, 103
State of Good Repair (SGR), 15
APPENDIX E: ACRONYMS

state safety oversight (SSO), 21, 35, 103
statement of work (SOW), 32, See also scope of work, Project Requirements
Definition
Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP), 19
sufficient level of design. See Design, definition - sufficient level of design
sustainability, 73
System Integrated Test (SIT) Plan, 34
System Safety Program Plan (SSPP), 34
System Security Plan (SSP), 34
third party: coordination during construction, 88
Threat and Vulnerability Assessment (TVA), 34
training and operations: training and transition to, 102
Training Plan, 34
Transit and Safety Oversight (TSO), 35
transit asset management (TAM), 14
Transit Award Management System (TrAMS), 19, 117
United States Green Building Council (USGBC), 74, 94
value engineering, 30, 56, 57, 58, 64, 65, 66, 68, 72, 73, 77, 79, 83; analysis
report, 30
vehicles: post-delivery audit for rolling stock, 103
warranty administration, 103